



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

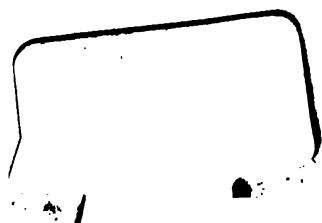
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

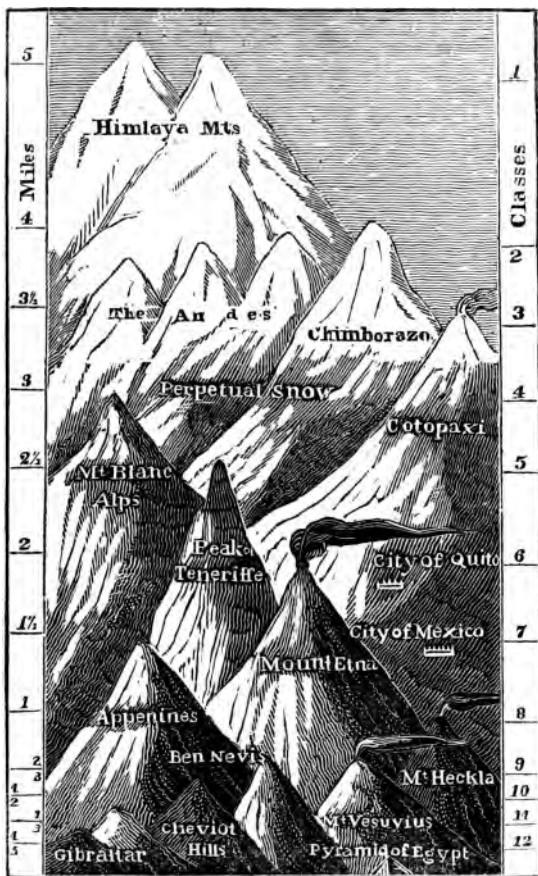
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





MENTS OF GEOGRAPHY.

Comparative Heights of Mountains.



56
RUDIMENTS

OF

GEOGRAPHY,

ON A NEW PLAN.

DESIGNED TO ASSIST THE MEMORY BY
COMPARISON AND CLASSIFICATION;

WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS OF
MANNERS, CUSTOMS, AND CURIOSITIES.

ACCOMPANIED WITH AN

ATLAS,

EXHIBITING THE PREVAILING RELIGIONS, FORMS OF
GOVERNMENT, DEGREES OF CIVILIZATION, AND
THE COMPARATIVE SIZE OF TOWNS,
RIVERS, AND MOUNTAINS.

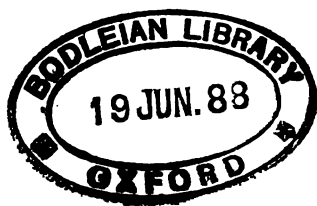
BY WILLIAM C. WOODBRIDGE, A.M.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR GEO. B. WHITTAKER,
AVE-MARIA LANE.

1828.

2017. f. 160



PREFACE.

IN examining the progress of knowledge, we find it is by *comparing* facts of the same kind, by arranging them in *classes*, and reducing them to *general principles*, that so much simplicity and beauty have been given to modern works of science. We are not now compelled to learn every fact in philosophy by itself; but a single statement or principle is given, which includes a thousand particulars, and enables us to judge correctly, in many cases, where we have no other means of information.

This valuable method has not been generally adopted in systems of Geography. Most works on this science are arranged in a manner which seems only adapted to a gazetteer, or a book of reference. Every variety of information, in politics, history, topography, and natural science, is collected under the head of each country; and facts of the same kind are usually scattered under so many different heads, that it is a laborious task to form correct views of any single subject. The hope of applying the principles so much valued in other sciences to Geography induced the author to undertake the present work. The merit of some already published would otherwise have rendered it unnecessary.

In this, a chapter is devoted to each subject of importance, that the pupil may receive deep and distinct impressions before another is introduced; and general statements are made, which include the most important facts on this subject in every portion of the world. In the same manner those characteristics of a great division of the Earth, which are similar in all its countries, are described by a single remark, and the pupil is referred to this, instead of repeating it for each country. Thus, when it is stated, that savage nations "have little knowledge of agriculture and the mechanic arts" (p. 39), the pupil knows, of course, after examining the state of nations on his chart, that this is true of the

Siberians, the Indians, &c. When he is told, that the countries of the Torrid Zone produce the "finest fruits and the most beautiful vegetables" (p. 27), the mere inspection of his map will show him, that this is the fact in Hindoostan, Guinea, &c. In the same manner, when he learns, that the Northern Countries of Europe "have neither spring nor autumn" like ours (p. 64), he need not be told again, that this is the case in Sweden, Norway, and Lapland. By this method the time and effort, which would be necessary in repeating the statement under each country, are saved, and the comparison renders the idea more valuable to the learner.

The attempt has also been made to apply the principle of comparison to the difficult subject of *numbers*. Mountains, rivers, cities, &c. are arranged in classes, according to their size, in order not only to "relieve the memory from a fruitless burden, by substituting a few numbers for many," but to lead to those comparisons of known with unknown objects, without which numbers are of little value.

In every part of the work, the author has also kept the principle in view, that no language can impress ideas so deeply on the mind as *information addressed to the eye*. It is peculiarly important to adopt this method in a science, that treats chiefly of *visible objects*, of which it is impossible to gain a complete idea without inspection or delineations. A description cannot give so distinct views of the geography of a country as a *map*; and no words can so fully convey the idea of a remarkable custom or curiosity as a *drawing* or *engraving*.

On these principles is founded the plan, which forms the basis of the following work, of obliging the pupil, by means of questions, to acquire his knowledge of natural geography almost entirely from an *atlas*. In order to furnish a more complete delineation of countries, the class of each object is marked upon it in the maps of this work; and by means of distinct numbers and characters they exhibit, not only the *place* of rivers, mountains, and cities, but their *size*, the *capitals* of countries, and the seats of *universities*. In the Chart of the inhabited world, not only the *situation* and *outlines* of countries are shown, but their *population*, *government*, *religion*, and *state of civilization*. In the View of Regions and Climates, the same countries are exhibited with lines which mark their *climate*, and point out in the list of

animals and vegetables such as are usually found in them. With the same objects in view, a series of *engravings* have been selected from the works of distinguished travellers and other authors, many of which will be found to convey ideas, which no description could have furnished.

It has been proved by experiment, that the various methods described not only oblige the pupil to understand what he is learning, but increase his interest in the study. They are also fitted to improve his mind, to give him the habit of arranging his knowledge, and to assist him in forming those general views, which are so important to the correctness of his judgment on all subjects. To aid still farther in the same object, the travels on the map are introduced, and many questions are asked, which require the pupil to exercise his reason as well as his memory. It has also been the author's aim, throughout the work, to lose no opportunity of cultivating the moral feelings as well as the intellectual powers of those who may study it, and to teach them how to value the privileges of a free, enlightened, and Christian country.

REMARKS TO INSTRUCTORS,

On the method of using the work.

In the use of this work, it is intended, that the pupil should derive most of his information from a careful examination of the maps and chart, as the only substantial basis of a knowledge of geography. No pains should be spared to render this part of the subject familiar to his mind. To effect this object, the questions have been made as numerous and particular as the limits of such a work will allow, and it is not designed to give him any information in words, which he can obtain from the maps.

It is particularly important, that the pupil should early be made familiar with the *points of the compass* in the place where he is, and on the map, and with the divisions of a country founded on them, as exhibited in the figure, page 6. This is necessary, that he may be able to describe without hesitation the source and course of rivers, the situation of places, &c. To aid in this, he should be accustomed to place the upper part of the map towards the North.

At first he should be required to answer the questions concerning boundaries, rivers, &c. with the map before him, and to

point to the part he is describing, that the instructor may be assured, that he understands what he is repeating. But he should be taught, as soon as possible, to fix the image of the map in his mind, and repeat from this entirely. When this is effected with the maps and chart of the present work, it is evident, that the great difficulties of the study will be overcome, and the most important facts of natural and political geography will be impressed on his memory, in such a manner as not to be easily forgotten.

The author knows no method of study so well fitted to accomplish this object, as that of drawing maps *by the eye*. After the pupil has become familiar with a map, let him draw on a slate the outline of one country at a time, commencing with the lines of latitude and longitude, and using these as guides. He should do this, at first perhaps by some easy mode of measuring, but ultimately *by the eye alone*. Let him repeat this, until he is able to draw the same outline from *memory*. Let him proceed by the same steps to draw sketches, including the mountains and rivers, with their names, and those of the countries or seas around, and afterward to mark the places of the principal cities.

After a class have had some practice in this exercise, their knowledge may be easily tested, and the countries they have gone over reviewed, by an application of the British system of instruction, which the celebrated authors of that system do not appear to have made.

Let the pupils be seated at a desk, before the instructor, each with a small slate, and a set of directions like the following be given them.

Draw the outlines of England.—Write the names of the seas and countries around it.—Draw the river Thames—the Severn, &c.—Mark the place of London—of Liverpool, &c.

Let each direction be executed by all at once, in silence, and their slates then exhibited to the instructor for correction. It is believed, that no method of examination will be more rapid, or more decisive as to the knowledge of the pupils, and that none will excite more interest in their minds. The same method may be applied to the Chart also.

The work is intended to comprise all that is necessary for those who wish to acquire the *rudiments* of the science. In the present edition, the more difficult parts are printed in a small type, to be reserved for a revisal, or for the use of older pupils,

and questions of a similar kind are marked (II). But so great a variety is found in the capacity of different pupils at the same age, that the judgment of the instructor only can decide in a particular case what portions should be learned at first. In studying it for the first time, it is not necessary, and will not usually be advisable, that the pupil should be required to recollect the *classes* of cities, rivers, &c. In examining the maps, the numbers which indicate them will scarcely fail to make an impression on his memory, and he will be better prepared to attend to these, and to the "General Views," after he has gained some familiarity with the subject.

The questions are more numerous than in other school geographies, in order to direct the pupil to *every thing* which is essential for him to learn (except in some parts to be committed to memory), and to furnish in this way, not so much a system of Geography as *a course of geographical instruction*. But it will contribute much to his improvement, if, as he advances, the instructor will vary and multiply his inquiries, particularly with reference to latitudes and longitudes, and the distances and bearings of places and countries from each other. In the present edition, where any perplexity may occur in finding the answer to a question, a reference is made to the map, or the section of the work which contains it.

It is advised by some instructors, that, even in commencing this study, the natural geography of all the great portions of the world should be learned, before any attention is paid to the description of any particular countries. Where this method is preferred, the necessary questions will be found following the account of each quarter of the world.

It is important, if the pupil has not been familiar with maps, that he should be taught their use by the most simple examples. A map of his school-room, his play-ground, or his father's residence, should be first drawn for him in a rude way. The limits should then be extended to the surrounding houses, the town, and the neighbouring towns; and the transition will then be easy to those of countries and continents. Familiar spots should also be drawn for him on different scales, that he may not be perplexed by the different appearance of a country on different maps arising from this cause.

It is particularly recommended, that the pupil be early taught

the correct pronunciation of names, by reading a portion in the accented tables, prefixed to this work, every day.

The plan of the present work is to embrace every thing as much as possible in general descriptions, to be applied to particular countries included in them. In order to gain the full advantage of the system, it is important often to call up the pupil's attention, and refresh his memory by questions referring to these descriptions. The following questions furnish an example of this mode of examination. They may be used for a general review of the book, and made more or less minute, according to the views of the instructor, and the capacity of the pupil.

QUESTIONS FOR REVIEWING.

To be answered for each country.

In what Zone and in what part of it is ——— * ? What is the general climate of that part of the Earth ? (*See description of Zones and Climates.*) What is the state of civilization ? (*See Chart.*) Describe this state. (*See article Civilization.*) What is the government ? (*See Chart.*) Describe this government. (*See article Government.*) What is the religion ? (*See Chart.*) Describe this religion ? (*See article Religion.*)

To which division of ——— † does ——— * belong ? What is the general climate of these countries, and of the part of ——— † in the same latitude ? What are generally their exports ? What is the character of the people ? (*See description of the country, and of that division of America, Europe, Asia, or Africa, to which it belongs.*) What is the population, and what proportion does it bear to that of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland ? (*See Chart.*)

In what region as to climate is it situate ? (*See table of Climates.*) What vegetables may you expect in it ? (*See Table.*) What animals ? What is the state of its manufactures ? (*See article Manufactures.*) What can you say of its commerce ? (*See Commerce.*) What is the state of literature and education ? (*See Literature.*)

* Here insert the name of the country.

† Here insert the name of the quarter of the globe to which it belongs.

CONTENTS.

	Page		Page
COMPARATIVE TABLES .	xvii	Frigid Zones .	28
Height of Mountains .	xviii	Temperate Zones .	29
Length of Rivers .	xx	Climates .	30
Revenue .	xxiii	Seasons .	31
Army .	ibid.	Days and Nights .	32
Navy .	ibid.	Longitude and Difference of	
Extent of countries .	xxiv	Time .	34
Population of countries .	xxv	Winds .	36
Population of Cities and		Tides .	37
Towns .	xxvii	INHABITANTS OF THE EARTH.	
INTRODUCTION .	1	Races of Men .	38
Solar System .	3	Civilization .	39
Maps .	5	Government .	41
NATURAL DIVISIONS OF THE		Religion .	42
EARTH .	7	DESCRIPTION OF COUN-	
The Ocean .	9	TRIES.	
The Land .	12	EUROPE .	44
DIVISIONS OF OCEANS AND CON-		Questions on the map of	
TINENTS .	13	Europe .	47
Deserts .	15	The British Isles .	49
Mountains .	ibid.	England and Wales .	52
Volcanoes .	18	Cities, &c. of ditto .	55
Rivers .	19	Scotland .	57
Cataracts .	21	Cities, &c. of ditto .	59
Lakes .	22	Ireland .	60
Classification of Cities .	23	Cities, &c. of ditto .	62
ASTRONOMICAL DIVISIONS.		Foreign Brit. Possessions	ib.
Circles and Latitudes .	24	<i>Northern Europe</i> .	63
Zones and Climates .	26	Russia .	64
Torrid Zone .	ibid.	Poland .	65

	Page		Page
Sweden . . .	66	Hindoostan . . .	100
Norway . . .	67	Ceylon . . .	101
Lapland . . .	ibid.	Burmah . . .	ibid.
Denmark . . .	68	Siam . . .	102
<i>Middle Europe</i> . . .	69	Anam or Tonkin . . .	103
Netherlands . . .	70	Malaya . . .	ibid.
Germany . . .	ibid.	China . . .	104
German States . . .	71	East India Islands . . .	105
Prussia . . .	72	AUSTRALIA . . .	107
Austria . . .	ibid.	New Holland . . .	108
Switzerland . . .	73	New Zealand . . .	109
France . . .	74	Other Islands . . .	ibid.
<i>Southern Europe</i> . . .	75	POLYNESIA . . .	110
Spain . . .	76	Travels on the map of	
Portugal . . .	77	Asia . . .	112
Italy . . .	78	Cities of Asia . . .	114
Turkey . . .	79	AFRICA . . .	118
Ionian Isles . . .	80	Questions on the map of	
Travels on the Map of		Africa . . .	119
Europe . . .	ibid.	<i>Northern Africa</i> . . .	121
Cities of Europe . . .	82	Barbary States . . .	122
ASIA . . .	85	Egypt . . .	123
Questions on the map of		<i>Middle Africa</i> . . .	124
Asia . . .	87	<i>Western Africa</i> . . .	125
<i>Northern Asia</i> . . .	89	Upper Guinea . . .	126
Siberia . . .	ibid.	Senegambia . . .	ibid.
<i>Middle Asia</i> . . .	90	Lower Guinea . . .	ibid.
Circassia and Georgia . . .	91	<i>Eastern Africa</i> . . .	127
Tartary . . .	ibid.	Coast of Zanguebar . . .	ibid.
Independent Tartary . . .	92	Adel, Ajan, &c. . .	128
Chinese Tartary . . .	ibid.	Nubia . . .	ibid.
Turkey in Asia . . .	93	Abyssinia . . .	129
Persia . . .	94	<i>Central Africa</i> . . .	130
East Persia . . .	95	Soudan . . .	ibid.
Tibet . . .	96	Ethiopia . . .	131
Napaul and Bootan . . .	ibid.	<i>South Africa</i> . . .	ibid.
Japan . . .	97	Colony of the Cape . . .	132
<i>Southern Asia</i> . . .	ibid.	<i>African Islands</i> . . .	133
Arabia . . .	98	Travels on the map of	
India . . .	99	Africa . . .	134

CONTENTS.

xv

	Page		Page
Cities of Africa . . .	135	Colombia . . .	173
ARCTIC REGIONS . . .	138	Guiana . . .	174
Greenland . . .	140	<i>Middle Countries</i> . . .	175
ANTARCTIC REGIONS . . .	ibid.	Peru . . .	ibid.
AMERICA . . .	141	Brazil . . .	176
NORTH AMERICA . . .	ibid.	<i>Southern Countries</i> . . .	177
Questions on the map of		La Plata . . .	ibid.
North America . . .	143	Chili . . .	178
Russian America . . .	145	Native Tribes of South	
British America . . .	ibid.	America . . .	179
North West Territory . . .	146	Cities of America . . .	182
New Britain . . .	147	Voyages on the maps and	
British Provinces . . .	ibid.	chart of the world . . .	186
United States . . .	148	GENERAL VIEWS . . .	188
Eastern States . . .	151	Regions and Climates . . .	ibid.
Middle States . . .	153	Vegetables . . .	190
Southern States . . .	155	Animals . . .	193
Western States . . .	158	Minerals . . .	195
Missouri Territory . . .	160	Table of Minerals . . .	197
Spanish North America . . .	161	Table of Mineral Springs . . .	198
Mexico . . .	ibid.	Arts and Manufactures . . .	199
Guatemala . . .	162	Canals . . .	201
Native Tribes of North		Commerce . . .	204
America . . .	163	Learning . . .	206
WEST INDIA ISLANDS . . .	165	Education . . .	207
Travels on the map of		Manners and Customs . . .	209
North America . . .	168	Food . . .	ibid.
SOUTH AMERICA . . .	169	Dress . . .	210
Questions on the map of		Habitations . . .	212
South America . . .	171	State of Society . . .	213
<i>Northern Countries</i> . . .	173		

COMPARATIVE TABLES

OF RIVERS, MOUNTAINS, CITIES, AND COUNTRIES,
ACCENTED FOR PRONUNCIATION.

The following tables have been compiled with great care from a comparison of the best authorities. The accounts of population for Great Britain, France, Prussia, and the United States, are taken from the last census of these countries ; and for other countries, from Hassel, the most diligent and accurate writer on this subject on the continent.

They are arranged, not for reference, but for study ; to serve as exercises to the pupil in the manner directed in the questions annexed. Those names, which belong to Europe, are in Roman letters ; those which belong to other parts of the world, in Italics. They are also intended to be used as reading tables, and accents and rules of pronunciation are added to assist the pupil in avoiding common errors.

Rules for Pronunciation.

Ou is usually pronounced as *oo*, as in *Amour*, *Toulouse*, *Rouen*, *Mourzouk*, &c. ; *ei* and *ie* as *ee*, as in *Kiel*, *Kiev*, *Dnieper*, *Dniester*, *Niemen*, *Liege*, *Tangier*, *Drontheim*, &c. ; *i* as *e*, in *Trieste*, *Mobile*, *Guayaquil*, *St. Augustine*, *Porto Rico*, &c. ; *a* as *aw*, as in *Raleigh*, *Altamaha*, *Ottawa*, *Wabash* ; *ae* as *a*, in *Haerlem* ; *ua* as *au*, *Guayaquil*, *Guatemala*, &c. ; *eaux* as *o*, in *Bordeaux*, &c. ; *ch* as *k*, in *Munich*, *Zurich*, *Bucharest*, *Cherson*, *Mocha*, *Chiapa*, *Chimborazo* ; *g* is silent in *Bologna*, *Cologne*, *Cagliari* ; *Schuylkill* is pronounced *Schoolkill* ; *Leipsic*, *Lipescic* ; *Marseilles*, *Marsails*.

TABLE I.—HEIGHT OF MOUNTAINS.

First Class.	Feet.	Fourth Class.	Per du' (Pyrenees)	11,000
<i>Him'ma leh Mts.</i>		<i>Vol. Pi chin'ca</i>	<i>Mt. Et'na</i>	
— <i>Da wa la ge'ri</i>	27,677	<i>Mt. Blanc, (Alps)</i>	<i>Al tai'an Mts.</i>	
—		<i>Mt. Ro'sa, (do)</i>	<i>Snow Mts. (Africa)</i>	
		<i>Geesh (Abys.)</i>	<i>Mt. Cen is' (Alps)</i>	10,000
		<i>Eg'mont (N. Z.)</i>	<i>Volcano of Bou'rbon</i>	
		<i>Ha mar (Chin. Tar.)</i>	—	
Second Class.			Seventh Class.	
<i>Him'ma leh Mts.</i>		—	<i>City of Qui'to</i>	
— <i>2nd peak</i>	25,659		<i>Mt. Ar'a rat</i>	9,500
— <i>3rd peak</i>	22,217		<i>Leb'a non</i>	
<i>Chim bo ra'zo</i>	21,440	Fifth Class.	<i>St. Goth'ard (Alps)</i>	9,000
<i>Man'flos (Chili.)</i>		<i>Mt. Fair'wath er</i>	<i>Ve li'no (Apennines)</i>	
<i>Chil lan' (do.)</i>	20,000	<i>Mt. O'phir. (Sum.)</i>	<i>Lom'nitz (Car pa'thi an)</i>	8,000
—		<i>Mt. At'las</i>	<i>Mts. of Gon'dar</i>	
		<i>Peak of Te ne ri ffe</i>	<i>Dof' ra field Mts.</i>	
		<i>Chip pe wa'n Mts.</i>	—	
		— <i>Highest Peak</i>	12,500	
Third Class.			Eighth Class.	
<i>Vol. Co to pur'i</i>			<i>Blue Mts. (Jam.)</i>	
<i>Mou na Ka'ah</i>	18,000		<i>City of Mex'ico</i>	
<i>(Owhyhee)</i>			<i>City of Pu eb'la</i>	7,000
<i>El bu'r'us, Caucasus</i>			<i>Pi'co (Azores)</i>	
<i>Mt. Eli'as</i>		Sixth Class.		
<i>V. Or-i'xa ba</i>	17,000	<i>Si er'ra Ne va'da (Spain)</i>		
<i>V. Popo cat a petl</i>		<i>James's Peak</i>		

<i>White Mts. (Washington)</i>	6,634	<i>Mt. Ve su'vi us</i>	3,700	<i>Eleventh Class.</i>	
<i>Ce vennes' (Sansl)</i>	6,300	<i>Snow don' (Wales)</i>		<i>Snea Fell (I. of Man)</i>	2,004
<i>O lym'pus (Tur.)</i>	6,000	<i>Ta'ble Mt. (S. Africa)</i>		<i>Rock of Gib ra'li tar</i>	1,500
<i>Blaa serik (Greenland)</i>		<i>Ca'der I'dris (Wales.)</i>		—	—
<i>Mt. Heck'la</i>	5,000	—		<i>Twelfth Class.</i>	
<i>Mt. Ida (Tur.)</i>				<i>But'terton Hill (Devon)</i>	1,200
<i>Ninth Class.</i>			<i>Questions.—Mention the mountains of the first class in order. In what country, and in what part of it, is each found? Give the same account of the other classes. Which are the loftiest mountains in Europe? Asia? Africa? N. America? S. America?</i>		
<i>Ben Nev'is (Scot.)</i>	4,300	<i>Mont Ser'rat (Spain)</i>			
<i>Whern side (Eng.)</i>		<i>Macilguddy's Rocks (Ireland)</i>			
<i>Green Mts. (U.S.N.A.)</i>		<i>Cross'fell (Cumb.)</i>	3,300		
<i>Cairn go'rnum (Scot.)</i>	4,000	<i>Ben Lo'mond (Sc.)</i>			
<i>Gauts (Hind.)</i>		<i>Che'vi ot Hills</i>	2,658		
<i>Ben Law'ers (Perth.)</i>					

Questions.—Mention the mountains of the first class in order. In what country, and in what part of it, is each found? Give the same account of the other classes. Which are the loftiest mountains in Europe? Asia? Africa? N. America? S. America?

<i>Krist'na</i>	<i>Ne'va and Vol'kof</i>	<i>Drave</i>	
<i>Po to' mac</i>	<i>Nie'men</i>	<i>Dou'ro</i>	
<i>Cum'ber land</i>	<i>Pet cho'ra</i>	<i>E'bro</i>	
<i>O sage'</i>	<i>Ta'gus</i>	<i>Gua di a'na</i>	
<i>Duies'ter</i>	<i>Vis'tu la</i>	<i>Po</i>	
<i>Gam'bi a</i>	<i>Theiss</i>	<i>Cape Fear</i>	
<i>U'ral</i>	<i>Al a ba' ma</i>	<i>Hud' son</i>	
<i>Hel'mund</i>	<i>Pe dee'</i>	<i>Ga ronue'</i>	
	<i>San teé</i>	<i>Glom'men</i>	
	<i>Tom big'bee</i>	<i>Gua'dal quiv'ir</i>	
	<i>Sa van'nah</i>	<i>Mayne</i>	
	<i>Sus que han'nah</i>	<i>Tor'ne a</i>	
	<i>A pu re'</i>	<i>Del'a ware</i>	
	<i>Meuse</i>		
	<i>Con nect'i cut</i>		
	<i>Al'le ga ny</i>		
	<i>Il li nois'</i>		
	<i>Bog</i>		
	<i>Save</i>		
	<i>Ol'i phants</i>		
	<i>O'der</i>		

<i>James</i>	<i>We' ser</i>
<i>Ot ta wa'</i>	<i>Seine</i>
<i>Al ta ma ha'</i>	<i>Mo non ga he' la</i>
<i>Ap' pa la chic' o la</i>	<i>Dahl</i>
<i>W a' bash</i>	<i>Ma ris' sa</i>
<i>Yu pu'ra</i>	<i>Inn, (Ger.)</i>
<i>Dwi'na (northern)</i>	
<i>Dwi'na or Du'na</i>	
<i>Elbe</i>	
<i>Rhone</i>	
<i>Loire</i>	

COUNTRIES IN THE ORDER OF REVENUE, ARMY, AND NAVY.

TABLE III.—RATES AS TO REVENUE.*		TABLE IV.—ARMY.		TABLE V.—NAVY.	
		<i>Emp. of China</i>	<i>In war in peace</i>		<i>Ships.</i>
1 Great Britain		1819	800,000	* Great Britain	1817 1091
2 France		1808	700,000	Russia	1820 263
3 Russia			560,000	France	1819 97
" Austria			450,000	Spain	1814 80
4 Netherlands			-	<i>United States</i>	1820 70
" Prussia		1805	250,000	Turkey	1806 67
5 Spain		-	150,000	* Denmark	1803 53
" <i>United States</i>				* Sweden	1808 53
6 Portugal		1803	80,000	Netherlands	36
" Turkey			-	Portugal	18
" K. of Naples			-	Naples	16
7 K. of Sardinia			-		
" Sweden			40,000	* <i>Much reduced.</i> Q.—What nation has the largest navy, and what the next? What two others have more ships of war than the U. States? What nations fewer?	
" Denmark		1815	30,000		
8 Roman States			30,000		
" Tuscany			20,000		
9 Switzerland			-		
Questions.—What			12,000		
civilized country has the			10,000		
largest revenue? What			-		
is next to it? What			-		
countries follow in suc-			-		
cession?			-		
* <i>From S. to En. Brit.</i>			-		

NOTE.—The subjects of these tables are so variable, and the statements of the best authorities so imperfect, and often contradictory, that it is found impracticable to render them more complete or accurate.

TABLE VI.—COUNTRIES IN THE ORDER OF EXTENT.

1 million or upwards.	<i>Tur. in Asia</i>	500,000	<i>Virginia</i>	64,000	<i>Scotland</i>	30,000
	<i>Persia</i>	450,000	<i>Georgia</i>		<i>Ireland</i>	
	<i>Abyssinia</i>		<i>Missouri</i>		<i>Bavaria</i>	
	<i>E. of Tonkin</i>	300,000	<i>Eng. and Wales</i>	58,000	<i>S. Carolina</i>	28,000
ASIA	<i>Morocco</i>		<i>Illinois</i>	52,000	<i>Netherlands</i>	
	<i>Austria</i>	250,000	<i>From 40,000 to 50,000.</i>		<i>Denmark</i>	24,000
AFRICA	<i>France</i>	215,000	<i>Louisiana</i>		<i>Switzerland</i>	22,000
	<i>Spain</i>		<i>N. Carolina</i>	48,000	<i>Hanover</i>	18,000
<i>Russia in Asia</i>	<i>Em. of Japan</i>		<i>Poland</i>		<i>Maryland</i>	14,000
<i>Empire of China</i>	<i>Tur. in Eur.</i>	180,000	<i>New-York</i>		<i>10,000, and below.</i>	
AUSTRALIA	<i>Sweden</i>		<i>Alabama</i>	45,000	<i>Vermont</i>	10,000
and POLYNESIA	<i>Tripoli</i>		<i>Mississippi</i>		<i>N. Hampshire</i>	9,500
EUROPE	<i>Egypt</i>	160,000	<i>Pennsylvania</i>		<i>Tuscany</i>	8,400
<i>U. States & Ter.</i>	<i>Norway</i>	119,000	<i>Kentucky</i>	42,000	<i>New Jersey</i>	8,300
<i>China</i>	<i>K. of G. Britain</i>	100,000	<i>Napl. and Sic.</i>		<i>Wurtemberg</i>	7,800
<i>La Plata</i>	<i>Prussia</i>		<i>Tennessee</i>		<i>Saxony</i>	7,200
<i>Russia in Eu.</i>	<i>From 50,000 to 100,000.</i>		<i>Ohio</i>	40,000	<i>Massachusetts</i>	7,200
<i>Hindoostan</i>	<i>German States</i>	98,000	<i>Portugal</i>		<i>Baden</i>	5,800
<i>Colombia</i>	<i>Algiers</i>	89,000	<i>From 10,000 to 40,000.</i>		<i>Connecticut</i>	4,700
<i>United States</i>	<i>Tunis</i>	70,000	<i>Indiana</i>	37,000	<i>Delaware</i>	2,100
<i>From 100,000 to 1 mil.</i>	<i>Italy</i>		<i>Maine</i>	32,000	<i>Rhode-Island</i>	1,350
<i>Arabia</i>						

TABLE VII.—COUNTRIES IN THE ORDER OF POPULATION.

100 millions & upwards.	Ger'man States	13	Portugal	Under 1 million.
A'sia	Eng'land & Wales	12	Ba va'ri a	Hay'ti 900,000
Emp. of Chi'na	Ti'bet	11	Po'land	Hes'se 680,000
China	A ra'bi a	mill.	Co lom'bi a	Under 1/4 a million.
Eu'rope	United States	11	Swed'en	Smaller German States.
Hin doo stan'	Bur'mah	11	Ro'man States	North American United States in 1820.
Af'ri'ca	Spain	11	Al giera'	Above 1/2 a million.
From 20 to 100 millions.	Pruss'ia	11	Scot land	New York 1,300,000
Rus'sia in Eu'rope	West Per'sia	11	La Pla'ta	Pennsylvania } 1,050,000
Japan'	Tur'key in Asia	11	From 1 to 2 millions.	Vir gin'ia } 640,000
A mer'i ca	Asia'tic Russia	11	Den'mark	N. Car o li'na } 500,000
France	From 5 to 10 millions.	11	Switz'er land	Ken tuck'y } 500,000
Aus'tri a	Tur'key in Eur. mill. 9	11	Sax'ony	Massachusetts } 500,000
E. India Isles	K. of Na'ples	11	Wur'tem burg	S. Car o li'na }
Anam or Tonkin	Mex'i co	11	Han'o ver	From 100,000 to 500,000.
K. of G. Britain	Ire'land	11	Tri'po li	Ten nes see' } 400,000
Italy	Neth'er lands	11	Gua te ma'la	Ma'ry land }
N. A mer'i ca	From 2 to 5 millions.	11	Tas'ca ny	
From 10 to 20 millions.	K. of Sar din'i a	11	Si am'	
S. A mer'i ca	E'gypt	11	Chi'ti	
Mo roc'co	Tu'nis	11	Ba'den	
East Per'sia	Brazil'	11	Nor'way	

Georgia	340,000	N. Hampshire	240,000	Ala ba'ma	121,000	Del'a ware	72,000
Maine	298,000	Vermont		Below 100,000.		Mis sou'ri	66,000
New Jersey		Louis i a'na		Rhode-Is'land	83,000	Il li nois'	55,000
Connecticut	270,000	In di a'na	150,000	Mis si s'i p'i	78,000	Co lum'bi a Dis.	30,000

Questions.—What countries have above 100 mil. Earth are in it? Describe each class in the same manner. lions of inhabitants? Which is the largest, and which Give a similar account of countries in the order of the least of this class? What great divisions of their size.

<i>La Paz</i>	<i>Yar' mouth</i>	<i>St. John's (Newf.)</i>
<i>Par a ma ri' bo</i>	<i>Que bec'</i>	<i>Car li'sle</i>
<i>Cuen'ca</i>	<i>Mour zou'k</i>	<i>Arch a'n gel</i>
<i>Vil la Ri'ca</i>	<i>Go' a</i>	<i>Ca'm bridge</i>
<i>Cape Hen'ry</i>	<i>Cape Town</i>	<i>L'O ri'ent</i>
<i>Chi a'pa</i>	<i>Port Lou' is (Isle of Bourbon)</i>	<i>Co im' bra</i>
<i>Men doz'a</i>	<i>Ber' gen</i>	<i>Trip' o li (Africa)</i>
<i>Mo del' na</i>	<i>Luc' ca (Italy)</i>	<i>Si' out</i>
<i>Mec'ca</i>	<i>Berne</i>	<i>Lat a koo'</i>
<i>Mo'cha</i>	<i>O'ro pe sa</i>	<i>Cash' gar</i>
<i>Si lis' tri a</i>	<i>Cher'bourg</i>	<i>Fai fo</i>
<i>Tef'lis</i>	<i>Wool'wich</i>	<i>Tonsk</i>
<i>Ches' ter (Eng.)</i>	<i>Ox' ford</i>	<i>Bill bo' a</i>
<i>Shrews' bury</i>	<i>Basle</i>	<i>Co run' na</i>
	<i>Cho lu' la (Mexico)</i>	<i>St. Ubes</i>
	<i>Ve'ra Cruz</i>	<i>Cordova</i>
	<i>Port au Prince</i>	<i>Sal a man' ca</i>
	<i>Lon don der' ry</i>	<i>Sid' ney (N. Holl.)</i>
	<i>Ro set' ta</i>	<i>Bay onne'</i>
	<i>Val la do lid (Mex.)</i>	<i>Sa'lem (N. Am.)</i>
	<i>Mon' te Vidl' e o</i>	<i>Al'ba ny (N. Am.)</i>
	<i>St. Paul</i>	<i>Rich' mond (N. A.)</i>
	<i>Hall' i fax (N. A.)</i>	<i>Prov' idence (N. A.)</i>
		<i>Con cep' tion</i>

Twelfth Class.

Perth
Zan' te
Ab'be 'ville (France)
Bou logne'
St. Ju' an Fron' tera
Gua da la x a ra

Note.—The remaining Cities of this class found upon the map almost all contain from 10,000 to 11,000 Inhabitants.

Do' ver	St. Sal va dor	
Ma ca' o	Xa la pa (Mex.)	
Ma lac' ca	A' guis Ca li en' tes	
Pan' a ma	(Mexico)	
St. Do min' go	Cax a mar ca	
St. Luis Po to' si	(Peru)	
Du rango	Val pa rai' so	
Co han (Guat.)		
	12,000	12,000

RUDIMENTS OF GEOGRAPHY.

INTRODUCTION.

1. GEOGRAPHY is a description of the Earth and its inhabitants.

2. It has been found by sailing round the Earth, that it is a vast globe or ball.

3. This is also proved by the appearance of a ship coming towards the land. The highest sails are always seen before the ship itself, which could not be if the Earth were not a globe.

4. On every side of the Earth we find a multitude of stars above us, most of which are called fixed stars, because they do not perceptibly change their situation from age to age.

5. About 1000 are visible to the eye in a clear night ; but by the use of telescopes it has been discovered, that there are several millions.

6. They are at an immense distance from us ; and are supposed by many to be suns, enlightening other worlds.

7. Among these stars we find a few, distinguished by their steady light, which change their place continually, returning at given periods in the same path.

8. They are hence called *planets*, or wandering stars ; and when examined with telescopes, they are found to be globes like our Earth.

9. On farther examination it becomes evident, that the Earth is also a planet, moving among the fixed stars; and all the planets are found to revolve round the Sun, at different distances, forming the solar system.

10. There are seven primary planets in our system, revolving round the Sun in the following order: as in the figure; 1. Mercury; 2. Venus; 3. the Earth; 4. Mars; 5. Jupiter; 6. Saturn; 7. Herschel, or the Georgium Sidus.

11. The revolution of the Earth round the Sun is called the annual or yearly revolution, and causes the changes of the seasons.

12. Its orbit, or path among the fixed stars, is called the *Ecliptic*.

13. Beside this revolution, the Earth rotates, or turns like a wheel on its own axis, once in 24 hours; and as the Sun enlightens only one half the globe at once, each part is alternately in the light and shade.

14. This motion causes day and night, and is called the diurnal or daily revolution.

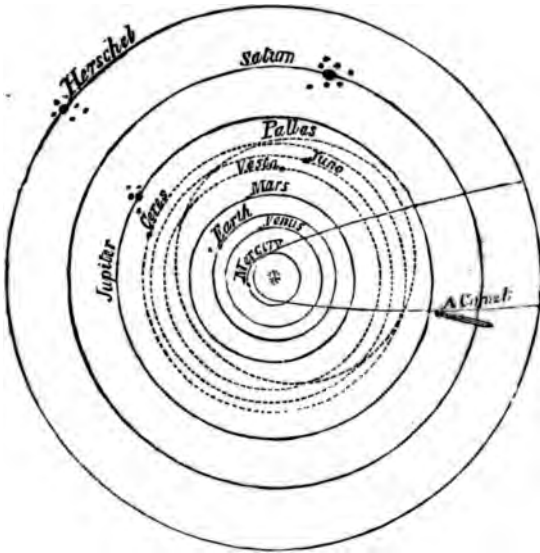
15. In consequence of these motions of the Earth, the Sun appears to move round in the *Ecliptic* every year; and to revolve round the Earth every day.

Questions.—What is Geography? What is the figure of the Earth? How is this proved? What do we see around the Earth at night? How many fixed stars are there? What are they supposed to be? What moving stars do we find among them? What are they called, and what are they? What is the Earth itself?

How many primary planets are there in our system? What is the revolution of the Earth round the Sun called? What is the name of its orbit? What other motion has the Earth? What does this cause? How does the Sun appear to move?

Note.—*Younger pupils are expected to omit all that is printed in smaller type, as in the opposite page, and all questions marked (II.) until they review the book.*

16. THE SOLAR SYSTEM.



The *Sun* is an immense body, a million times larger than the Earth, and 95 millions of miles from us. It is 883,000 miles in diameter, and turns on its own axis in 25 days.

Mercury is a small planet, so near the Sun that it is seldom seen.

Venus is a bright planet, nearly as large as the Earth. When it rises a short time before the Sun, it is called the Morning Star; when it sets soon after the Sun, the Evening Star.

The *Earth* is nearly 8000 miles in diameter, moving round the Sun in one year, or 365 days 6 hours, at the rate of 68,000 miles an hour.

Mars is a planet much smaller than the Earth, of a red, fiery colour.

Jupiter is nearly 1500 times larger than the Earth, and the largest of all the planets.

Saturn is 1000 times larger than the Earth, and surrounded by a broad, flat ring, which has been ascertained in modern times to be double.

Herschel, the most distant of the planets, is 90 times as large as the Earth, but is seldom seen without a telescope.

All the *planets* have motions like those of the Earth, but in various times, as exhibited in the following table of their size, situation, and motions.

	Dia- meter in miles.	Distance from the Sun in miles.	Day, or revolution on axis.	Year, or revolution round Sun.	Hourly motion in orbit.
			<i>hrs. m.</i>		<i>miles.</i>
Mercury	3,000	36 millions.	unknown.	3 months.	111,000
Venus	7,600	68 do.	23 20	7 do.	81,000
Earth	7,900	95 do.	23 56	12 do.	68,000
Mars	4,200	144 do.	24 39	23 do.	56,000
Jupiter	89,000	491 do.	9 55	12 years.	30,000
Saturn	70,000	901 do.	10 16	29½ do.	22,000
Herschel	35,000	1800 do.	unknown.	83½ do.	15,000

There are 18 secondary *planets* or Moons, revolving round these primaries, of which the Earth has 1, Jupiter 4, Saturn 7, and Herschel 6.

The Moon is only 2180 miles in diameter. It is 240,000 miles from the Earth, and revolves round it in 29½ days.

Four very small planets, called *asteroids*—Ceres, Pallas, Juno, and Vesta—have been discovered, revolving between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter.

Beside these, more than 400 *comets*, or stars with bright trains, have been seen revolving round the Sun.

All these bodies form the Solar System, and receive their light and heat from the Sun in the centre.

The comets move irregularly, sometimes coming very near the Sun, and then flying off beyond the most distant planet.

Only a few have been known to return, and at intervals of 75, 100, or 200 years.

Questions (II.)—What is the size of the Sun, and its distance

from us ? Describe Mercury ; Venus ; the Earth ; Mars ; Jupiter ; Saturn ; Herschel. Have all the planets motions like those of the Earth ?

Mention the diameter of the planets in their order as stated in the table. What is the distance of each from the Sun ? What is the length of the day of each ? What is the length of the year of each ? How many miles do they move in an hour ? Which are the two largest ? Which is next in size ? What two are nearly equal ? Which is the smallest ? Which is nearest the Sun ? Which moves most rapidly ? Which has the shortest year ? Which is farthest from the Sun ? Which moves slowest ? Which has the longest year ? Which has the shortest day ?

How many Moons are there ? How many asteroids ? How many comets ? How do comets move ? Have any returned ?

EXPLANATIONS,

Preparatory to the use of Maps.

17. The most correct representation of the Earth's surface, with the proper distance and size of its parts, is an *artificial globe*. A half globe is called a *hemisphere*.

18. A *Map* is a picture of the surface of the Earth as it would appear to a person at some distance above it.

We cannot see more than half the globe or one hemisphere at once, and therefore a map of the world must always be drawn in two parts, as in the atlas.

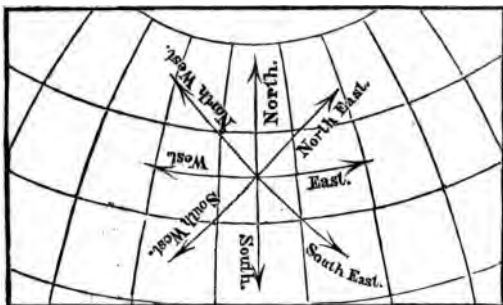
19. A *Chart* is a representation of the surface of the Earth, as if it were spread out on a plane or level, used chiefly by mariners.

20. There are four *cardinal points* of the compass, North, South, East, and West ; marked N. S. E. W.

East is that part of the heavens in which the Sun rises, and West, that part in which it sets. When we stand with our right hand to the East, the West is on our left, North before us, and South behind us.

21. On a map, or chart, the upper part is always North, the bottom South, the right hand East, and the left hand West, as represented in the following figure.

INTRODUCTION.

*Points of the Compass.*

22. Between the cardinal points the four chief points are, North-East, South-East, North-West, South-West. These are marked N. E.—S. E.—N. W.—S. W.

23. The course of a river is that point of the compass towards which the river runs. The course or direction of one place from another is that point of the compass towards which it lies.

24. The various parts of a country, or portions of the Earth, are also named according to the points of the compass, the middle being called the interior, as in the figure below.

North-west- ern part.	Northern part.	North-east- ern part.
Western part.	Interior, or Central part.	Eastern part.
South-west- ern part.	Southern part.	South-east- ern part.

Parts of a Country.

Questions.—What is the most correct representation of the Earth? What is a map? What is a chart? What are the four cardinal points? Which point of the compass is East? How do you find the rest after knowing this? Where are these points on maps and charts? What points are there between the four principal points? What is the course of a river? What is the direction of one place from another? How are the different parts of a country sometimes named?

In finding the points of the compass on the map, the pupil must always remember, that, as the map is a picture of a globe, the lines drawn North and South, and East and West, are not generally straight, but curved to represent circles; he must therefore trace the points of the compass according to these lines.

Thus on a map of the world, the Azores are South from Iceland, though they appear to be South-east; and Newfoundland is South-west, though it appears to be South. So Iceland is West from Norway, though it seems to be North-west.

Questions.—What land is East of Greenland? What island is South of Iceland? What land is East of Iceland? What West of the Azores? What is South-west of these islands? In what direction is Spitzbergen from Greenland? Greenland from Spitzbergen? The West Indies from the Azores? What places do you find South of Spitzbergen, down to the South pole? In what direction is Kamschatka from Iceland? Iceland from Kamschatka?

NATURAL DIVISIONS OF THE EARTH,

With Questions on the map of the world.

25. The general form of the Earth is that of a globe, flattened at the poles; but the surface of its solid body is irregular. In some parts it is hollowed into deep cavities, which are filled with the waters of the *sea*; in others, it rises above the level of the water, and forms *land*, the surface of which is diversified by mountains and valleys.

The greatest elevation of mountains above the level of the ocean does not exceed five miles, or about a sixteen-hundredth part of the whole diameter of the Earth; and we have no reason

to suppose that the depth of the valleys filled by the sea is greater. All these elevations and depressions therefore, although they appear vast to us, are too small in proportion to the diameter of the Earth to alter its general form.

26. When we look upon a globe, or a map of the world, we see that the greater part of the Earth is covered by a vast collection of water. It occupies one half of the northern hemisphere, and nine tenths of the southern, or two thirds of the surface of the globe.

27. The whole body of the water is called the *ocean* or *sea*; but for the sake of convenient reference, it is divided upon maps into various parts, which are called oceans, seas, bays, gulfs, &c., according to their extent and situation. All these are only branches or divisions of the sea.

There are five principal divisions of the water called *oceans*.—The Northern or Arctic, the Southern or Antarctic, the Atlantic, the Pacific, and the Indian.

28. In the midst of the waters which surround the globe are two large portions of land, not divided by water, which are called *continents*. They are called the Eastern and Western continents, because one is East, the other West, of the meridian line passing through Ferro, from which geographers formerly reckoned the longitude.

29. The smaller portions of land surrounded by water are called *islands*.

The continents are really vast islands, and it has been made a question among geographers whether New Holland should not be called a continent. In this work it is classed among islands.

30. The land on the globe is also divided by geographers into four smaller portions, called *quarters*—Europe, Asia, and Africa, on the Eastern continent; and America on the Western, including North and South America.

To these may be added the islands of the Pacific Ocean, divided into Australia and Polynesia.

31. The quarters of the globe are divided into smaller portions, called *countries*, each of which usually contains men of one nation, speaking the same language.

Countries are divided into *states* or *provinces*, containing *cities*, *towns*, and *villages*. An *empire* is composed of many countries united under one government.

Questions.—What is the general form of the Earth, and what is its surface? How much of the Earth's surface is covered with water? How are the waters divided? What are the five principal divisions? What large portions of land do we find on the globe? What are they called? What are islands? How is the Eastern continent bounded, or what ocean is on the N., and what on the E., S., and W.? (*See the map of the world for these questions and others.*) How is the Western continent bounded? What other divisions of the land are there? What ocean must we cross in going from Europe to America? What one in going from Asia to America?

In what direction is Europe from America? In what direction from Europe are Asia and Africa? How is North America bounded? South America? Europe? Asia? Africa? Where are Australia and Polynesia? How are these great portions of the globe divided? How are countries divided? What is an empire?

What very large island lies S. E. from Asia? What others near it? What one E. of Africa? What islands W. of Europe? What between North and South America? What are some of those in the Pacific Ocean? What is the largest island on the globe?

32. THE OCEAN.

a. The ocean or sea is in fact one immense body of salt water encompassing the Earth on every side, but it is convenient to give various names to different parts for the sake of description.

b. The *Northern Ocean* is enclosed between the northern extremities of the two continents. It is connected with the Pacific Ocean by Bhering's Straits, about 48 miles in width; and with the Atlantic, by the sea or passage which separates Norway from Greenland. This ocean has usually been considered as extending about 3000 miles from Bhering's Straits to the Atlantic, and is supposed to be chiefly covered with ice. But even the coasts of

Asia have been but partially explored, and we know little of the quantity of land it contains.

The extent of Greenland is unknown; and the recent discoveries of the British expedition, under the command of Captain Parry, render it probable, that there is a considerable tract of land East of this, which is not connected with North America.

c. The *Southern Ocean* lies around the South pole, extending to Cape Horn and the Cape of Good Hope. It forms an immense circular zone of water, embracing a mass of perpetual ice, amid which only a few bleak and desolate islands or headlands have been seen.

d. The *Pacific Ocean* lies on the West of America. It extends from Bhering's Straits about 8000 miles to the limits of the Southern Ocean; and from America to Asia about 11,000 miles, or nearly half round the globe. It contains numerous clusters of islands, lying chiefly within the tropics.

e. The *Indian Ocean* is a branch of the Southern, extending into the Eastern Continent between Africa and New Holland. Its extent from East to West is from 3000 to 6000 miles; and from North to South, about 4000 miles. Between this Ocean and the Pacific are the Asiatic islands, and those which compose Australia. The whole of these are sometimes considered as belonging to one sea, termed the *Indian Archipelago*.

f. The *Atlantic Ocean*, lying on the West of Europe and Africa, is from 3000 to 4000 miles in breadth, between America and Europe; and 7000 in length from the Northern to the Southern Ocean. Between Norway and Greenland the breadth is not more than 700 miles; between the capes of Africa and South America, it is about 1500.

g. At first view, these immense oceans appear to be useless wastes; but on farther examination, we find they serve many important purposes.

h. Oceans are the habitation of innumerable fish, which furnish food to a large part of mankind.

i. The waters of the ocean purify the air by their incessant motion; and the vapours which rise from them fall in rain and snow, to water the Earth.

k. They are always nearly of the same temperature; and the winds which blow from them cool the Earth in summer, and warm it in winter.

l. They are perpetually circulating in currents, which carry the

warm water of hot countries to colder ones, and bring back cold water to cool the warmer regions.

m. The ocean also serves as the highway from one part of the globe to another; and makes it easy to obtain, by commerce, the valuable productions of all climates, and the useful knowledge of all nations.

Questions (II.)—Is there more than one ocean? Describe the Northern Ocean. The Southern. The Pacific. The Indian. The Atlantic.

Does the ocean appear to be useful? How are oceans useful in furnishing us food? What effect have they on the air, and what benefit do we receive from their vapours? What effect have they on the temperature of the Earth? What currents have they? Are they of any use in commerce?

It will be useful to consider each of the oceans separately, and examine the branches and subdivisions which extend into the land around it. Thus it will be seen on examining the maps of the world, Europe, and Africa, that the Atlantic Ocean extends into the Eastern Continent, forming the Gulf of Guinea, the Bay of Biscay, and the Mediterranean, Irish, North and Baltic Seas. These seas are connected with the ocean by straits and channels; and each spreads into other smaller branches, forming gulfs, bays, and harbours. The following questions, with the aid of the maps, will show their connexions, and give more distinct and permanent ideas than a description.

Questions on the map (II.)—Describe the situation of each of the great branches of the Atlantic on the Eastern Continent. (*See the maps.*) Mention the passages leading to each. What branches has the Baltic Sea? The North Sea? The Irish Sea? What are the branches of the Mediterranean on the northern coast? What is the principal branch on the southern coast? (*The eastern part of the Mediterranean is often called the Levant.*)

Describe the principal branches of the Atlantic in the northern part of North America (*See map of North America.*) The two between North and South America. What are the passages leading to each? Mention the chief branches of Baffin's Bay. Of Hudson's Bay. Of the Gulf of Mexico. Of the Caribbean Sea.

What are the principal branches of the Atlantic, on the eastern

coast of the United States? What are its principal branches on the coast of South America? (*See map of South America.*)

What straits connect the Atlantic Ocean with the Pacific? What branches of the Pacific are on the western coast of South America? What bays, sounds, and gulfs on the western coast of North America?

What great branches of the Pacific on the eastern coast of Asia? (*See map of Asia.*)

What gulfs in the Chinese Sea? What passages connect the Pacific and Indian Oceans? What gulf penetrates the northern coast of New Holland? What are the two great branches of the Indian Ocean extending into Asia? What branches are on the coast of Africa? What of the Arabian Sea?

33. THE LAND.

a. The greater part of the land upon the globe lies in the northern hemisphere; and the southern presents little beside islands, to interrupt the continuity of the water.

b. There is little appearance of regularity in the situation and arrangement of the land upon the globe. In some parts, the land extends into the sea, forming *peninsulas*, *capess*, and *promontories*; in others, it is indented and divided by the *seas*, *gulfs*, *bays*, and other branches of the ocean. Its outline is thus rendered very irregular. The situation and size of its *mountains*, *valleys*, *plains*, and *rivers* is marked with similar irregularity.

c. The continents are singularly different in their outlines. The coasts of Europe and Asia are equally indented with bays, gulfs, and seas. Africa is nearly destitute of these inlets. On the Western Continent the eastern coast only is much indented with bays, and the western coast has no inlet of importance except the Gulf of California.

d. In examining the map, it will be seen that the Eastern Continent has two principal projections on the West—Europe and Africa. They are almost separated from the centre of the continent by seas and rivers. South America may be considered as the principal projection of the Western Continent, of which North America seems to form the main body. Each of these divisions has its own projections and peninsulas, in various di-

rections. The situation of Africa and South America, and their connexion with the main land, form one point of resemblance between the two continents.

e. The only example of uniformity in the outlines of the continents, is in the direction of their peninsulas. With the exception of Yucatan in Mexico, and Jutland, or Denmark, in Europe, all the principal peninsulas of both continents extend towards the South.

South America, California, Florida, Sweden and Norway (which formed the ancient Scandinavia), Spain, Italy, Turkey, Africa, Arabia, Hindoostan, Farther India, Corea, and Kam-schatka, are all examples of this fact.

f. Both continents terminate in bold and lofty promontories, at Cape Horn and the Cape of Good Hope, on the South.

g. The direction of the two continents is entirely different. The Eastern Continent extends principally from East to West; the Western, from North to South.

h. The greatest length of the Eastern Continent in a straight line is about 9000 miles, from the Cape of Good Hope to the north-eastern part of Siberia. The greatest length of the Western Continent, is about 7000 miles, from Bhering's Straits to the mouth of the river La Plata.

Questions (II.)—Which hemisphere contains most land? Is there any regularity in the appearance of the land? Describe the outlines of the continents. What are the principal projections of the two continents? What example of uniformity is there? How do the continents terminate on the South? What is their direction? What is the length of each?

DIVISIONS OF OCEANS AND CONTINENTS.

34. When a part of the ocean is almost surrounded by land, it is called a *sea*. A salt lake is also called a *sea*, as the Caspian Sea, and Sea of Aral in Asia.

Questions on the map.—What seas are there S. of Europe? What are there E. of Asia? What sea between Asia and Africa? Where is the North Sea? What sea is N. of South America? What lakes are called seas, and where are they?

35. The narrow passage of water into a sea, or between two portions of land, is called a *strait*.

A wider passage is called a *channel*.

A *sound* is a channel or strait which may be sounded, or the depth of which may be measured with a line.

Questions on the map.—What are the straits of the Mediterranean and Red Seas? What straits connect the Pacific and Arctic Oceans? What straits are south of South America? What is a channel? What channel is between Africa and Madagascar? What is a sound?

36. A part of the ocean running up into the land with a broad opening is called a *gulf* or *bay*.

A *harbour* is a small bay where ships may anchor.

A *road* is a part of the sea near a coast, where ships may ride or lie at anchor.

Questions on the map.—What gulf is S. of North America? What W. of Africa? What bay S. of Asia? What is a harbour? A road?

37. That part of the land which lies next to the sea is called a *shore* or *coast*.

Questions on the map.—What countries are on the western coast of Africa? What on the eastern coast of North America? What on the western?

38. A point of land on the coast projecting into the sea is called a *cape*. A high cape is also called a *promontory*.

Questions on the map.—What is the southern cape of America? What is that of Africa? What of Hindoostan? What is the most western cape of Africa? The most eastern of South America? What is the northern cape of Europe? Of North America? The southern of Greenland? What is a promontory?

39. A portion of land which runs out into the sea, joined to the continent only by a narrow strip or neck of land, is called a *peninsula*.

South America and Africa are the largest peninsulas.

Questions on the map.—What peninsulas in Asia? What in Europe?

40. The neck of land which joins a peninsula to the main land is called an *isthmus*.

Questions on the map.—What isthmus joins South America to North America? What one joins Africa to Asia?

DESERTS.

41. *Deserts* are immense tracts of land, usually level, in which scarcely any water is found, and few plants grow.

42. The most remarkable desert known is the Sahara of Africa, a vast plain of burning sand, 2000 or 3000 miles long, with fertile spots, called *oases*, scattered here and there in it, like islands in the ocean.

Questions.—What are deserts? Which is the most remarkable?

43.

a. Many districts of Africa, Arabia, and Persia are covered with similar deserts, among which the Arabian Desert, or The Wilderness, in which the Israelites wandered, is the most celebrated.

b. The Desert of Cobi or Shamo in Asia is a lofty, cold region, 1500 miles long.

c. A large part of Siberia and the northern parts of North America are made almost deserts by perpetual frost.

d. Sometimes immense plains are found covered with grass, —in Asia called *steppes*, in South America, *pampas*, and in the United States, *prairies*.

Questions (II.)—In what other countries are there deserts? Describe that of Cobi? What is the state of Siberia and parts of North America? What plains are sometimes found?

MOUNTAINS.

44. *Mountains* are vast prominences on the surface of the Earth. Some which send forth fire and smoke from their tops are called *volcanoes*.

45. The tops of the loftiest mountains are about five miles above the level of the sea.

They appear vast to us; but they are no more when compared to the Earth, than the roughness on the rind of an orange.

46. Mountains sometimes occur single, but generally

united, forming *chains* or *ridges*, of various lengths and heights.

Questions.—What are mountains? How high are the loftiest mountains? What is the diameter of the Earth? (*See Astronomy.*) How do these mountains compare with the Earth? Are mountains generally found single? What are the principal chains of mountains in Europe? (*See map of the world.*) What in Asia and Africa? What in America?

47.

a. Mountains may be arranged in 12 classes according to their height.

Let the pupil here examine the view of mountains in the frontispiece, and learn the classes from it.

b. The loftiest mountains yet discovered are the Himmaleh, or Himlaya Mountains, north of Hindoostan, in Asia.

c. The Andes of South America are the grandest chain of mountains on the globe, extending about 4000 miles, with numerous peaks four miles high. The most celebrated peak is Chimborazo, and the loftiest volcano is Cotopaxi.

d. The Himmaleh Mountains and the Andes are so lofty, that, although they are situated in very hot countries, the tops are covered with perpetual snow.

In ascending these mountains, you will find every climate. The foot is burning with heat, the middle is temperate and delightful, and the top always frozen.

e. The Cordillera of Mexico is next in height, containing several peaks about $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles high, of which the most remarkable is the volcano of Popocatepetl.

These with the Rocky Mountains, which are not so high, seem to be a continuation of the Andes, and make the whole American chain 11,000 or 12,000 miles long.

f. The next chain of mountains in height is that of the Alps in Europe, some of the peaks of which, as Mont Blanc, are three miles high. (*See map of Europe.*)

g. At this height perpetual snow is usually found in the warmest parts of the Earth; but the height of the line of perpetual snow gradually decreases as it approaches either pole.

h. The Peak of Teneriffe, on one of the islands of Africa, is an example of the fifth class.

i. Mount Etna in Sicily, the Altaian chain in Asia, and the Pyrenees of Spain, are of the sixth class, corresponding in height to the city of Quito in South America.

j. In the seventh class are the White Mountains of New Hampshire in North America, which are nearly of the same height with the city of Mexico and the plain around it.

k. Mount Hecla in Iceland, and Ben Nevis in Scotland are of the eighth class.

l. Mount Vesuvius in Italy, of the ninth class, is nearly of the same height with Snowdon in Wales.

m. The Cheviot Hills of England are of the tenth class. The Allegany Mountains of the United States are generally of the same class, though in some parts nearly a mile high.

n. The Rock of Gibraltar is an example of the eleventh class, and Saddleback in Cumberland of the twelfth.

o. Mountains are very useful in supplying springs and streams, from the snow and vapours which collect on them at all seasons.

p. They serve also to moderate the heat, so that without them many parts of the Earth would become barren, like the deserts of Africa.

In describing a mountain, mention where it is, tell its class, and height; and if a chain of mountains, mention its course and length.

q. The following table shows the length of the principal chains of mountains, according to the best accounts.

	Miles.		Miles.
The Andes	4500	Dofrafield Mts.	1000
Mexican and Rocky Mts.	7000	Olonetz Mts.	900
Whole American chain	11,500	Allegany Mts.	600
Altaian Mts.	5000	The Alps	700
Mts. of the Moon		The Apennines	500
probably	2000	Carpathian Mts.	350
Ural Mts.	1500	Green Mts.	200
Mt. Atlas		The Pyrenees	

Questions (II).—What are the loftiest mountains yet discovered, or those of the 1st class? How high are they? What are the next, or those of the 2nd class? How high are these mountains? What is the principal peak? How are the tops of these mountains covered? What difference of temperature is perceived in ascending them? What mountains are of the 3d class, and what is their

height? What chain do they seem to belong to? What mountains are of the 4th class, and how high? At what height is perpetual snow found?

What is an example of the 5th class, and what is the height? What of the 6th? What of the 7th? What mountains of the 8th, 9th, and 10th classes, and of what height? What of the 11th and 12th? Of what important use are mountains? What other use? How do you describe a mountain? What is the length of the principal chains of mountains in the world? What mountain are you acquainted with, and what is its height and class? Is any mountain mentioned of the same height? How much higher are the Andes?

VOLCANOES.

48. *Volcanoes* are burning mountains, with an opening called a crater, from which fire or smoke continually rises.

49. During the eruptions of volcanoes, they throw out melted stones or *lava*, which flows in a terrible stream of fire, destroying every thing in its way.

Questions.—What are volcanoes? What takes place during the eruptions of volcanoes?

50.

a. Sometimes villages and whole cities have been buried in the ashes and lava thrown out from volcanoes, as Herculaneum and Pompeii, near Vesuvius.

b. The oldest volcanoes known are Vesuvius in Italy, and *Ætna* in Sicily. (*See map of Europe.*)

c. There is a volcano in the Lipari Islands, called Stromboli, which blazes continually, and gives light to mariners at night.

d. Among the Andes there are many volcanoes, and the loftiest in the world are those of Cotopaxi and Popocatepetl, in America, which rise three miles and a half above the level of the sea.

* The instructor should direct the pupil in his answers, in this instance, and other similar ones hereafter, and extend the questions as circumstances require.

e. The peak of Teneriffe, and some mountains among the Andes, which were once volcanoes, have ceased to burn.

f. It is estimated that there are 200 volcanoes in the world; of which 13 are in Europe, 66 in Asia, and 118 in America, including the islands of each quarter.

g. Earthquakes are sudden motions in some part of the Earth, which often overthrow houses and cities, and sometimes cause the ground to open and swallow them up.

h. Volcanoes are useful in giving vent to the internal fires of the Earth, which might otherwise cause such earthquakes as to destroy whole countries.

*Questions (II).—*What dreadful effects have sometimes been produced by the ashes and lava of volcanoes? What are the oldest volcanoes known? What remarkable one is there in the Lipari Islands? What other volcanoes can you mention, and what are the loftiest in the world? Are there any volcanoes which have ceased to burn? How many volcanoes are there in the world? What are earthquakes? Of what use are volcanoes?

RIVERS.

51. The vapours which rise from the ocean and the land, fall again in dew, rain, and snow, producing springs and small streams.

52. Many small streams running from the mountains or high lands unite to form large streams or *rivers*, which carry back the water to the sea, and thus keep it in perpetual circulation.

53. The place from which a river runs is called its *source*; the place where it empties itself is called its *mouth*; the small streams which run into it are called *branches*.

54. Rivers, and their branches, are represented on a map by small black lines, smallest at the source.

55. Rivers usually overflow their banks during the seasons of heavy rain, making the land near them very fertile. Some countries, like Egypt, which have no rain, are watered only by their rivers.

56. Rivers are also useful in furnishing an abundance of fresh water, and in forming a highway to the ocean.

Questions.—What becomes of the vapours from the ocean? What do the small streams form? What are the source, mouth, and branches of a river? How are rivers represented on maps? What are the chief rivers of Europe? (*See map of the world.*) What are those of Asia? What of Africa? What of North America? What of South America? How do rivers fertilize the earth? How are they useful otherwise?

57.

a. The numerous rivers of the Earth may be divided into classes, according to their length.

b. 1st Class. The Amazon, of South America, is the first river in the world, considering its length and great size. It is more than 4,000 miles long, 180 miles wide at its mouth, and is navigable 3,000 miles for large ships.

c. The Mississippi, of the United States, is an example of the first class of rivers, but is only navigable 900 miles for ships.

d. 2d Class. The Nile of Africa, and the Volga of Europe, are from 2,000 to 3,000 miles long, and are examples of the second class.

e. The La Plata, of Paraguay, is of this class. It is 150 miles broad at its mouth, and is navigable 1,000 miles for ships.

f. 3d Class. The Orinoco, of South America, is the largest of the third class. It is 30 miles wide at its mouth, and is navigable 700 miles. The Danube is an example in Europe.

g. In the following table will be found the length of each class of rivers, with examples.

<i>Class.</i>	<i>Length.</i>	<i>Examples.</i>
I.	3000 to 4000 miles.	Amazon, (S. A.)
II.	2000 to 3000	Nile, (Africa.)
III.	1500 to 2000	Danube.
IV.	1000 to 1500	Dnieper.
V.	800 to 1000	Tigris, (Asia.)
VI.	600 to 800	Rhine.
VII.	500 to 600	Elbe.
VIII.	400 to 500	Tagus.
IX.	300 to 400	Garonne.

X	200 to 300	Seine.
XI.	100 to 200	Thames.
XII.	below 100	Mersey.

In describing a river, tell where it rises—what course it runs—and through what country—where it empties itself—and what is its class and size.

To describe the Nile, for example; say, The Nile rises in the Mountains of the Moon, runs north through Abyssinia, Nubia, and Egypt, and empties itself into the Mediterranean Sea. It is of the second class, from 2000 to 3000 miles long. (See map of Africa.) Then describe the branches on each side, beginning at the mouth.

Questions (II.)—How may rivers be divided? What is the largest river in the world? What is its length, and how far is it navigable? What other example of the 1st class? What is said of the La Plata? What is the largest river of the 3d class? What is the length of this class? Give the length and an example of the 4th class; of the 5th, 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, 12th. How do you describe a river? How do you describe the Nile? The Amazon? Describe the Elbe in Europe; the Ebro; the Rhone. What river are you acquainted with, and what is its length and class?

FALLS, OR CATARACTS AND RAPIDS.

58. The navigation of rivers is often interrupted by *rapids* and *falls*, which are sometimes remarkable for beauty or sublimity.

59. The falls of Niagara are considered the grandest in the world. They are one hundred and fifty feet high, and three quarters of a mile across.

Questions.—How is the navigation of rivers interrupted? What are probably the most remarkable falls in the world?

60.

a. The cataracts of the Nile in Nubia, and of the Rhine in Switzerland, are also very grand.

b. The River Funza, near Santa Fe de Bogota in South America, falls six hundred feet into a dreadful chasm; but the stream is small.

c. There are many interesting falls in the rivers of Great

Britain, of which the most celebrated are those of Fyers, and of the River Clyde in Scotland.

Questions (II).—Are there any cataracts in the Nile and the Rhine? What can you say of the falls of the Funza? What of the falls in Great Britain?

LAKES.

61. *Lakes* are large bodies of water surrounded by land.

62. The largest fresh-water lakes in the world are found in North America. Lake Superior, the largest of these, is 400 miles long and 60 broad.

Questions.—What are lakes? Where are the largest in the world? Which is the largest of these?

63.

a. The other large lakes of North America are from 200 to 300 miles long, and 50 or 60 broad.

b. The Lakes of Onega and Ladoga, the largest in Europe, are only 150 miles long, and from 30 to 75 broad.

c. Lakes Wenner and Wetter, in Sweden, are only 70 or 80 miles long. They are about as large as the Lake of the Woods in North America. The Lakes of Constance and Geneva, in Switzerland, are about 40 miles long.

d. Rivers sometimes pass through lakes, as the Rhine through Lake Constance, and the Rhone through the Lake of Geneva.

e. The Caspian Sea is a salt lake, 650 miles long and 260 broad, which receives many large rivers, but has no outlet. The Sea of Aral, and Lake Balkal in Asia, are about the size of the large American lakes. (*See map of Asia.*)

f. The lakes of the British Isles are comparatively small, but remarkable for their beauty. The most celebrated are the lakes of Cumberland in England, of Killarney in Ireland, and Loch Lomond, Loch Tay, Loch Katrin, Loch Fyne, and Loch Ness in Scotland.

Questions (II).—What is the size of the largest lakes of America? Of Europe? What is the size of lakes Wenner and Wetter? What of the lakes of Constance and Geneva? Do rivers ever run through lakes? How large is the Caspian Sea? What is the size of the Aral and the Baikal? What can you say of the lakes of the British Isles?

CLASSIFICATION OF CITIES.

64. The numerous cities and principal towns found upon the globe may be divided into 12 classes, according to their population.

65. Those of the first six classes contain 100,000 people or upwards.

66. Those of the last six classes contain less than 100,000.

67. Towns which contain more than 5,000 people are called *large towns*; those which contain less than 5,000, *small towns*.*.

Questions.—How may cities be divided? What is the population of the first six classes? What of the last six? What is the population of large and small towns?

68.

a. Those cities which contain a million of inhabitants, or more, may be ranked in the first class.

The chief cities of this class are Peking and Nankin in China, which are said to contain two or three millions.

London is the only city of this class, beside those of China and Japan, containing as many people as the kingdom of Saxony.

b. Paris, Constantinople, and Calcutta are the chief cities of the second class, containing 500,000 or 600,000 inhabitants, a population nearly as great as that of Wales.

c. Naples and Petersburg are examples of the third class, containing about 300,000 inhabitants each, or as many as the county of Surrey.

d. Vienna is of the fourth class, containing as many people as the county of Sussex.

* In the maps belonging to this work, cities, rivers, and mountains are numbered according to their classes, and from these numbers their comparative size may be learned. Cities, or principal towns, are represented by a circle containing a figure to denote their class. Large towns and small towns are indicated by small circles, as explained on the map. A square denotes a capital city, or seat of government. An asterisk (*) connected with a town denotes, that it contains a college or university. A crook (ʒ) denotes the see of a bishop.

e. Berlin is of the fifth class, containing more than 150,000 people.

f. In the following table will be found the population of each class of cities, with examples. The same classes are used for the population of *islands* also.

<i>Class.</i>	<i>Population.</i>	<i>Example.</i>
I.	1,000,000 and above,	London.
II.	500,000 to 1,000,000	Paris.
III.	300,000 to 500,000	Naples.
IV.	200,000 to 300,000	Vienna.
V.	150,000 to 200,000	Madrid.
VI.	100,000 to 150,000	Edinburgh.
VII.	70,000 to 100,000	Bordeaux.
VIII.	50,000 to 70,000	Ghent.
IX.	40,000 to 50,000	Norwich.
X.	30,000 to 40,000	Aberdeen.
XI.	20,000 to 30,000	Chester.
XII.	10,000 to 20,000	Canterbury.
LARGE TOWNS.	5,000 to 10,000	Stafford.
SMALL TOWNS.	under 5,000	Devizes.

In describing a city, tell in what country it is—on what sea, lake, or river, or whether it is inland—what is its class, and what its comparative population, as mentioned in the table.

Questions (II.)—What is the population of the 1st class of cities? What are the chief cities in this class? What can you say of London? What are the chief cities of the 2d class, and their population? What account can you give of the 3d class? of the 4th? of the 5th? of the 6th and 7th? What is the population of large and small towns? Repeat the population of each class, with an example from the table. What is the population of the place in which you live, and what is its class?

CIRCLES AND LATITUDES.

69. The axis of the Earth is the line on which we imagine the Earth to turn.

70. The ends of the axis are called the *North* and *South Poles*. (*They are shown in the figure, page 31, at N. and S.*)

71. At equal distances from the two poles, a great circle is supposed to be drawn, (at *E. in the figure, page 31*), which is called the *Equator*.

72. It divides the Earth into two equal hemispheres, or half globes: the Northern Hemisphere, in which we live, and the Southern. (*See this circle, and others mentioned hereafter, represented on the map of the world.*)

73. The Northern Hemisphere is represented by those parts of the map above the Equator, and the Southern by those parts below it.

74. *Latitude* is distance from the Equator, and is called North latitude or South latitude, according as it is North or South of this circle.

75. The circles which are drawn from East to West round the globe, and represented by lines across the map, are called *parallels of latitude*. (*See map of the world.*)

76. The lines drawn from the top to the bottom of the map, or North and South, are called *meridians*.

77. These lines are curved on maps, because they represent circles on the Earth.

78. Every circle is divided into 360 *degrees*, (marked °)—every degree into 60 geographical miles, or *minutes*, (marked ')—and every minute into 60 *seconds*, (marked ").

79. A degree on a *great circle*, such as the Equator or a meridian, which divides the Earth into two equal parts, is about 69 English miles.

80. Latitude is measured on the meridians in degrees, minutes, and seconds, and marked on the sides of the map.

81. At the Equator the latitude is nothing; at the poles it is 90 degrees. It can never be more than 90.

Questions.—What is the axis of the Earth? What are the poles? What circle is drawn between them? How does it divide the Earth? Over what countries and places does the Equator pass? How do you find the hemispheres on the map?

What is latitude? What are parallels of latitude? What are meridians? Why are these lines curved? How are great circles divided? How many common miles to a degree? How is latitude measured and marked? What is the latitude at the Equator and at the poles?

PROBLEM.

To find the latitude of a place.

82. Trace a line from the place of which the latitude is required to one side of the map, following the course of the parallels of latitude; the latitude will then be found marked in degrees.

The pupil must be careful to follow the curve of the parallels of latitude, as directed, p. 7, or he will often mistake. Thus the latitude of Newfoundland would seem to be but 40°, while it is 50°, and that of Greenland but 50°, although it is 60°.

Questions.—How do you find latitudes? What is the latitude of Newfoundland? Of Cuba? Of Cape Horn? Of Great Britain? Of the Cape of Good Hope?

The teacher may increase the number of examples, as he finds necessary to make the subject understood.

ZONES AND CLIMATES.

THE TROPICS AND TORRID ZONE.

83. The Sun is never vertical (*or immediately over the head*) to any places which are more than 23° 28' North or South of the Equator.

84. Two circles are therefore drawn at this distance on each side of the Equator, called *tropics*; the northern, the *Tropic of Cancer*, and the southern, the *Tropic of Capricorn*.

85. The Sun is vertical to every place between the tropics twice every year, so that this part of the Earth is most exposed to its heat. Hence this zone or belt is the hottest part of the Earth, and is called the *burning* or *Torrid Zone*.

86. The Torrid Zone, generally, has only two seasons; the wet in winter, when the rains are constant, and the dry in summer, when rain is unknown. Some parts, however, have two of each in a year.

87. During some parts of the year, the climate is the most delightful on Earth; at other seasons the heat is distressing, and water often scarce.

88. The Torrid Zone is also subject to the most violent diseases; and to storms and hurricanes, which destroy almost every thing within their reach.

89. This region produces the finest fruits, the most beautiful vegetables, and the largest and loftiest trees covered with perpetual verdure.

90. Its most remarkable productions are spices, gums, and aromatic plants, with coffee, tea, the sugar-cane, bread-fruit, &c.

91. In this zone are also found the largest and most beautiful, as well as the fiercest and most dangerous animals: the elephant, the lion, the tiger, the bird of Paradise, and the largest and most venomous serpents and insects.

92. The natives of the Torrid Zone are chiefly black or dark-coloured.

They are generally indolent and effeminate. They have strong passions, but are seldom distinguished for enterprise or learning.

Questions.—At what places on the Earth is the Sun never vertical? What circles are drawn to point them out? Over what places do the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn pass? (*See map of the world.*) How often is the Sun vertical to places within the tropics, and what effect does this produce? What is the name of the zone within the tropics? What is the climate in this zone? To what evils is it most subject? What may be said of vegetables and trees in the Torrid Zone? What are the most remarkable productions? What is observed of the animals? Mention some particularly. What is the colour of the natives of the Torrid Zone? What is their character? What countries in North America lie in the Torrid Zone? (*See map.*) What

islands? What countries in South America? What islands in the Pacific Ocean? What countries in Africa and Asia? Is any part of Europe in the Torrid Zone?

THE POLAR CIRCLES AND FRIGID ZONES.

93. On that day when the Sun is vertical (*or directly overhead*) to places under the tropic, it shines $23^{\circ} 28'$ beyond one pole, causing 24 hours' day to all places within that distance from the pole. (*See the figure of the Earth in its orbit.*)

At the same time the Sun leaves all places within $23^{\circ} 28'$ of the other pole, 24 hours in darkness.

94. Circles are therefore drawn $23^{\circ} 28'$ from each pole, (or in latitude $66^{\circ} 32'$) called *polar circles*.

The northern is called the *Arctic Circle*, and the southern, the *Antarctic Circle*.

95. The rays of the Sun fall most obliquely on those parts of the Earth which lie within these circles, and the nights of winter are there from 24 hours to six months in length.

96. Hence the regions within the polar circles are the coldest parts of the Earth, and are called the two *frozen* or *Frigid Zones*.

97. The *Frigid Zones* are chiefly covered with ice. They have but two seasons, a long winter of extreme cold, and a very short summer of great heat, without spring or autumn.

98. In the greater part of these zones there are no fruits, or large trees; and few plants fit for food, except some kinds of moss. None but the most hardy animals, as the bear, rein-deer, &c., can live in them.

99. The few inhabitants are dwarfish, with dark complexions, and little intelligence.

Questions.—At the time when the Sun is vertical to the tropic, what is the length of the day at the pole? What is the length of the night at the same time at the opposite pole? What circles are drawn in consequence of these facts? In what latitude are the polar circles? By what names are they distinguished? Over what

places do the polar circles pass? (*See the map.*) How does the Sun shine on this part of the Earth, and what is the length of the nights? What is the consequence?

What is the state of the Frigid Zones in respect to climate? How many seasons have they, and what are they? What is said of the trees and plants of the Frigid Zones? What animals live in these zones? Describe the inhabitants. What countries lie in the northern Frigid Zone? What in the southern? (*See map of the world.*)

THE TEMPERATE ZONES.

100. The two *Temperate Zones* are those which lie between the tropics and polar circles, or between the Torrid and the two Frigid Zones.

101. The Temperate Zones have four seasons, spring, summer, autumn, and winter.

102. The Temperate Zones, generally, are free from the distressing extremes of heat and cold, and enjoy a more pleasant and healthful climate than any other parts of the Earth.

103. Those parts which border on the Torrid and Frigid Zones are nearly similar to these zones in climate and productions.

104. The Warm Regions of the Temperate Zones produce rice, cotton, vines, olives, oranges, figs, and many fine fruits, and aromatic plants.

105. The middle and colder regions produce apples, pears, nuts, and similar fruits, with wheat, other grain, various esculent vegetables, and fine forest trees.

106. Hardy and useful animals abound in these zones, much more than those which are venomous and dangerous.

107. The inhabitants of the Temperate Zones are generally white, or have light complexions.

They have generally more strength of body and mind than those of the Torrid or Frigid Zones, and

have been more distinguished for industry, enterprise, and learning.

Questions.—What zones are those which lie between the Torrid and Frigid? How many seasons have the Temperate Zones? What is the climate generally in the Temperate Zones? What is it on the borders of the Torrid and Frigid Zones? What are the productions of the warmest parts of these zones? What of the colder parts? What animals abound in the Temperate Zones? What is the colour of the inhabitants? What is their character? What countries are found in the northern Temperate Zone? (*See map of the world.*) What parts of Africa, South America, and New Holland are in the southern Temperate Zone? What islands are in this zone?

OBSERVATIONS ON CLIMATES.

108. From the account of zones we see, that the parts of the Earth around the poles are the coldest, and those near the Equator the warmest.

109. The *cold* generally increases as the latitude, or distance from the Equator, *increases*; and the *heat* is greater as the latitude is *less*.

110. Places between the Equator and 35° of latitude have generally hot climates.

The countries which lie between 35° and 45° have generally the most pleasant climates in the world.

111. Those which lie between 45° and 65° of latitude have much more cold than heat; and those between 65° and 90° are frozen most of the year.

112. As we rise above the level of the sea the cold increases. At the height of little more than 3 miles, snow and ice never melt, even under the Equator; and in 45° of latitude, perpetual snow begins at the height of a mile and a half.

Hence the high and mountainous parts of the Earth are always cool, even in hot regions.

113. The heat or cold of the sea is never so great as that of the land.

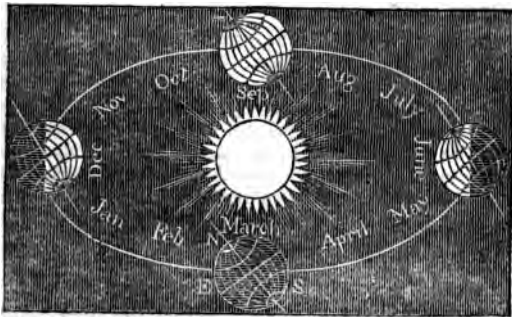
Hence islands, and most countries near the sea, are cooler in summer, and warmer in winter, than places inland, in the same latitude.

114. Countries covered with woods or forests are usually much cooler in summer, than those which are open and cultivated.

Questions.—I. What parts of the Earth are coldest, and what are warmest? How is the heat and cold proportioned to the latitude? What is generally the climate of places between the Equator and 25 degrees of latitude, and what between 25 and 35 degrees? How between 35 and 45 degrees? What are the climates between 45° and 65°, and what between 65° and 90°? What change is there in rising above the level of the sea, and at what heights do we find perpetual snow? What follows from these facts? What is the general temperature of the sea, compared with that of the land? What is that of islands and places near the sea? What effect have woods and forests on climates?

(II.) What are some of the coldest places and countries on the Earth? (*See map of the world.*) What are some of the warmest? What countries have the most pleasant climate? Observe the map of Europe, and consider which is probably the coldest, France or Switzerland? Which is probably the warmest, England or Poland?

115. THE SEASONS.



The Earth in its orbit.

a. The orbit of the Earth, or its path round the Sun, in which the Sun *appears* to move, is called the *Ecliptic*. This circle crosses the Equator.

b. The North Pole of the Earth always points towards the North Star in the heavens, and its axis is inclined to the Ecliptic, as represented in the figure.

Hence, as the Earth moves round the Sun, the North Pole is sometimes towards the Sun, and sometimes turned from it.

c. The Sun heats those parts of the Earth most, which are most directly exposed to its rays, as a fire heats those things most, which are directly before it.

The countries distant from these receive but a small portion of its heat. This causes a variety of seasons in different portions of the Earth.

d. During one half of the year, from the 20th of March to the 23d of September, the North Pole is towards the Sun, and the South Pole is turned from it.

Of course the Sun is then most directly over the Northern Hemisphere, and it is *summer* there, while it is *winter* in the Southern Hemisphere. (*See the figure of the Earth in its orbit.*)

e. During the other half of the year, from the 23d of September to the 20th of March, the Southern Hemisphere is towards the Sun, and it is *summer* there, while it is *winter* in the Northern Hemisphere.

f. Hence the Northern and Southern Hemispheres have always opposite seasons.

Questions (II.)—What is the orbit of the Earth called? How does the North pole always point? What parts of the Earth are most heated by the Sun? What is the effect of this? Which pole is towards the Sun from March to September? What is the consequence? How is it from September to March, and what is the effect of this? Are the seasons the same in the two hemispheres? See the map, and mention what are the principal countries in the Northern Hemisphere or North of the Equator. What season is it in the Southern Hemisphere when it is summer in the Northern?

116. DAYS AND NIGHTS.

a. As the Earth turns on its axis in twenty-four hours, all parts of the Earth have alternately day and night, but not of equal length.

b. At places under the Equator, the days are always equal, or twelve hours each, and the Sun rises and sets at 6 o'clock, the whole year round.

c. On the 20th of March and the 23d of September, when the Sun is directly over the Equator, it enlightens half of each hemisphere, and the days and nights are equal in all parts of the world. These periods are, therefore, called *equinoxes*. (See the figure, p. 31.)

d. From the 20th of March to the 23d of September, or in our summer, the Sun shines continually at the North Pole, causing six months' day at that pole, and leaves the South Pole six months in darkness.

At the same time it enlightens more than half the Northern Hemisphere, and less than half the Southern.

e. In consequence of this, every place in the Northern Hemisphere is more than twelve hours in the light, during our summer; and every place in the Southern Hemisphere, less than twelve hours.

f. From September to March, or in our winter, the North Pole has continual night, and the South Pole continual day. At the same time the Southern Hemisphere has days of more than twelve hours, while our days are less.

It is in this way that the long days of summer and the short days of winter are caused.

g. From the Equator to the polar circles, the days increase as the latitude increases. At these circles, the longest day is 24 hours, the longest night the same.

h. From the polar circles to the poles the days lengthen into weeks and months, so that at the poles there is but one day and one night in the year. In latitude 67° , the longest day is one month; in 70° , two months; in 80° , four months, and at the poles six months.

Questions (II).—Have all parts of the Earth equal days and nights? What is the length of the days at the Equator? Are they ever equal in other parts of the Earth? What are these periods called? On which pole does the Sun shine in our summer? What effect has this on the length of days? Which pole is enlightened in our winter? What is the length of the day then, in each hemisphere? What is the length of days from the Equator to the

polar circles? What is it at the polar circles? From the polar circles to the poles? In what places are the longest days four months, in what two, and in what one month?

PROBLEM.

To find the length of the longest day in any place.

On the chart of the world look at the latitude of the place on the left hand side of the map, and in the column of the longest days, the nearest figures will show you nearly the length of the longest day or night. Subtract this from 24 hours, and you have the length of the shortest day or night.

Questions (II.)—How do you find the length of the longest day in any place? What is the longest day at the North Cape? In Gibraltar? At the Cape of Good Hope? At Cape Horn? In Mexico? What is the length of the longest night in London? In Canada? In Greenland?

117. LONGITUDE AND DIFFERENCE OF TIME.

a. If a line be drawn North and South through any place on the globe, the Sun will be always over that line at noon or mid-day.

Such a line is therefore called a *meridian*, or noon line.

b. If this line be extended to the poles, all places under it (that is, all places exactly North and South of each other) will have noon at the same moment.

If this line be drawn round the Earth on the opposite side, it will pass through the places which have *midnight* at that time.

c. As the Earth turns from West to East, the Sun appears to move round it from East to West.

d. Therefore, if a number of meridians be drawn on the Earth, the Sun will first pass over the most eastern, and afterward over those which are most western.

Thus it is noon in *Europe*, after it is noon in *Asia*, and before it is noon in *America*.

Of course when it is *noon* in Europe, it is *afternoon* in Asia, and *forenoon* in America.

To illustrate this, let the pupil place his finger, to represent the Sun, over the map of the world, and draw the map from

West to East as the Earth moves. He will then see, that the Sun will first pass over places to the eastward, as Asia, and afterwards over those to the west, as Europe and America.

Only a few meridians are drawn upon maps; but every place on the Earth, however small, has its own meridian.

e. Distance East or West, from any meridian, has been called *longitude*, because the ancients supposed the Earth to be *longest* from East to West.

f. Longitude is generally reckoned from the meridian of Greenwich or London, and is counted 180 degrees, or half round the globe, each way.

Of course the longitude of a place cannot be more than 180 degrees.

g. All places in the same longitude are under the same meridian, and therefore have noon at the same time.

h. When it is noon at any place, it is midnight at all places 180 degrees from its meridian, because they are under the opposite meridian.

i. As the Sun appears to move round the Earth, or 360 degrees in twenty-four hours, every 15 degrees East or West will make one hour's difference in the time of places.

j. Longitude is marked in maps on the Equator, or at the top and bottom of the map.

The meridians, as well as parallels of latitude, are generally drawn for every 10 degrees. Sometimes they are drawn for every 15 degrees, for convenience in finding the difference of time, as on the Chart.

k. The degrees of longitude at the Equator are 69 miles each, but they grow less as you go towards the poles, where the meridians all meet. (*See map of the world.*)

Questions.—How must a line be drawn so that the Sun will be over it at noon? What is such a line called? If this line be extended to the poles, when will it be noon to those places under it? If it be drawn round the opposite side of the globe, what time will it be to places under it there?

How does the Sun appear to move? What follows from this? What time is it noon in Europe, compared with other parts of the world? What time is it in other parts of the world when it is noon in Europe? What is distance E. or W. called, and why? How is longitude measured? How many degrees can it be? In

what places do they have noon at the same time? When it is noon at any given place, how many degrees from that place is it midnight? How many degrees of longitude make one hour's difference in time? Where is it marked on the map? How many miles are there in a degree of longitude?

PROBLEMS.

I. *To find the Longitude of a place.*

Look to the top or bottom of the map, or on the Equator, and find the degree opposite the given place, taking care to follow the course of the meridians.

Questions.—What is the longitude of Petersburg from London? What is that of Mexico from the same place? Of the Sandwich Islands? Of China?

II. *To find the difference of time between any two places.*

On the chart of the world (where the meridians are drawn every 15 degrees) count the number of meridians from one place to the other, and you will have the number of hours' difference in their time.

If the second place be *East* of the first place given, the time of the second place is so many hours earlier than that of the first place, if *West*, so many hours *later* than that of the first place.

Questions (II.)—What is the difference of time between London and Mexico? What between London and the Sandwich Islands? What is the difference of time between London and Philadelphia? What between London and Calcutta? What between London and Cairo?

118. WINDS.

a. Wind is air put in motion, and is frequently caused by the different degrees of heat in various parts of the Earth.

The air always rises when it is heated; and the air from the colder parts rushes in to supply its place.

b. In islands, and places near the sea, in warm climates, there is usually a wind from the land in the morning, and from the sea in the afternoon, called *land* and *sea breezes*.

c. There is a constant stream of colder air from the adjacent countries towards the Torrid Zone, and as this air continues to move from West to East with the same swiftness as that part of the Earth from which it comes, it is left behind by the parts near

the Equator which move faster, and appears to blow towards the West. From this cause there are continual winds near the Equator from the East, called *Trade Winds*.

North and South of the Equator the trade winds become N. E. and S. E.

d. In the Indian Ocean there are winds called *monsoons*, which blow half the year N. E. and the other half S. W.

e. *Hurricanes* are violent storms, generally occurring in hot countries, in which the wind changes in a short time to every point of the compass, destroying almost every thing within its reach.

In a gentle breeze the air moves from 5 to 10 miles an hour; in a storm, 60 miles; and in a hurricane, 100.

f. *Whirlwinds* are formed by opposite winds meeting and moving swiftly in a circle, and raising sand and light bodies into the air.

In the deserts of Africa, they sometimes draw up the sand into a moving pillar, which buries all in its way.

When whirlwinds appear on the ocean, they draw up the water, and produce water-spouts.

g. In the deserts of Africa and Arabia a hot wind prevails, called the *samiel* or *simoom*, which is said sometimes to produce instant death. It can be avoided only by falling prostrate on the ground.

h. In the southern countries of Europe a warm wind blows from Africa, called the *sirocco*, which produces great uneasiness and weakness.

Questions.—What is wind? How is it produced? What are land and sea breezes? Where do the trade winds blow, and how are they produced? What are the monsoons? What are hurricanes? How fast does the wind move? What are whirlwinds? What do whirlwinds cause in the deserts? What in the sea? What is the samiel or simoom, and how is it to be avoided? What is the sirocco?

119. TIDES.

a. As the Moon moves round the Earth, the waters of the ocean, or of seas, immediately under the Moon, are raised above the common level by its attraction. This is called the *tide*.

The tide rises and falls twice every day.

As the Moon rises the tide begins ; when it is on the meridian the tide is high, and gradually sinks until the Moon sets, when it is low tide. The tide is high again, when the Moon is on the opposite side of the Earth, and low when it rises ; thus rising and falling regularly every six hours. The time is often changed by the situation of places, currents, &c.

In inland seas, as in the Mediterranean, there are no sensible tides.

Questions.—What is caused by the attraction of the Moon on the ocean and sea ? How often does the tide rise and fall ? Are there any tides in inland seas ?

RACES OF MEN.

120. There are five races of men on the Earth, distinguished from each other by their features and colour.

121. 1st. The European race, which includes Europeans and their descendants in America, with the Moors of Africa, and the people of western Asia and Persia.

In cool climates they have light complexions ; but in the warm climates of Asia, Africa, and the South of Europe, they are swarthy or brown.

122. 2d. The Asiatic or Mongolian race, of a *deep yellow*, extending over the eastern parts of Asia. They have straight, black hair, small eyes set obliquely, and projecting cheek bones.

The inhabitants of the Frigid Zone are like the Mongolians, except that they are dwarfish.

123. 3d. The American or Indian race, who are chiefly found in America, of a *copper colour*, with straight black hair, and high cheek bones.

124. 4th. The Malay race, found in Malacca and some of the Asiatic Islands, of a *deep brown* colour, with black curled hair, and broad mouths and noses, but otherwise with regular forms and features.

125. 5th. The African, or *black race*, with flat noses, woolly hair, and thick lips, who are found chiefly in Africa and Australia.

126. The Scriptures inform us, that all these races are brethren of the same family; the children of the same first parents.

127. The great difference between them has been in part produced by the difference of climate, food, dress, and modes of living; and in part by other causes, which we do not fully understand.

Questions.—How many races of men are there? What is the first race mentioned, and who belong to it? What is their complexion? What is the second race? What are the peculiar features of the Mongolian race? What are the people of the Frigid Zones? Where is the Indian race found, and what are their peculiarities? Describe the Malay race. What is the fifth race? To which race do we belong? Are these races from the same first parents? What has produced the difference?

CIVILIZATION.

128. Men are found in five different states of society; the savage, barbarous, half-civilized, civilized, and enlightened.

129. The state of society depends on the knowledge of the people; their skill in the mechanic arts, such as building, weaving, working in iron, &c.; and their manners and customs.

130. 1st. The savage state is that, in which men gain their support chiefly by *hunting, fishing, or robbery*, dress in skins, and generally live in the open air, or in miserable huts. (*See the engravings for the NORTH WESTERN TERRITORY, SIBERIA, AUSTRALIA.*)

They have little knowledge of agriculture or the mechanic arts, and no division of lands, or system of laws. They seldom collect in towns or villages.

131. 2d. The barbarous state is that, in which nations

subsist by agriculture, or the pasturage of cattle and sheep, with some knowledge of the mechanic arts. (*See the engravings for* CIRCASSIA, TARTARY, ARABIA, and SOUTH AFRICA.)

Barbarous nations collect in villages, and have some regular forms of government and religion ; but they have *no written language or books*.

Savages and barbarians are usually cruel in their customs, and oblige their women to labour like slaves.

132. 3d. The half-civilized state is like that of the Chinese, and other nations in the South of Asia, who understand agriculture and many of the arts very well, and have *some books and learning*, with established laws and religion.

Still they treat their women as slaves, and have many other customs like those of barbarous nations.

133. 4th. In the civilized state, which is found in Poland and South America, the sciences and arts are well understood, especially the art of printing ; and *females are treated as companions*.

Many of the customs of those civilized nations, which are not enlightened, are still barbarous, and most of the people remain in the grossest ignorance.

134. 5th. Enlightened nations are those, in which knowledge is more general, and the sciences and arts are found in the greatest perfection, as in most of the nations of Europe, and in North America.

The degree of civilization of each country is shown in the Chart of the World by several shades, which are there explained.

Questions.—What are the different states of society among men ? What is the savage state ? What can you say of the knowledge and customs of savages ? What nations of the world are in this state ? (*See the chart.*) What is the barbarous state ? What are the customs of these nations ? What nations are barbarous ? What is the general character of savage and barbarous nations ?

What is the half-civilized state? What knowledge have half-civilized nations? How do they treat their women? What countries are half-civilized?

Describe the state of civilized nations. What can you say of their customs and information? What are enlightened nations? In what quarters of the world do you find civilized and enlightened nations? What are those of each class in Europe and America?

135. GOVERNMENT.

a. The first kind of government in the world was the *patriarchal*, in which every father, or *patriarch*, governed his own family and servants. When any of these became governors of many kindred families, or a tribe, they were called *chiefs*.

b. The government of savage and barbarous nations is usually that of patriarchs, or chiefs, as among the Indians.

c. When particular chiefs become very powerful, they conquer many others, and become rulers of large countries. They are then called *monarchs*, *kings*, or *emperors*.

d. An *absolute monarchy* is a government, in which the *will* of the monarch is the *law*, as in Turkey and Russia.

e. A *republic* is that government, in which the people choose their rulers, as in the United States of America, and Switzerland.

f. A *limited monarchy* combines these two governments, and is that in which the people assist in making laws, which the king himself is obliged to obey, as in Great Britain.

On the Chart of the World, chiefs are indicated by stars: an absolute monarchy by a crown: a republic by a circle of stars: and a limited monarchy by uniting the two last emblems.

Questions.—What was the first kind of government? What was the next? What is done by some chiefs? What are they then called? What is an absolute monarchy? What absolute monarchies are in Europe and Asia? What is a republic? What republic is there in Europe? What is a limited monarchy? Mention the limited monarchies in Europe.

PAGANS.

*Brahma.**Buddh.**Chinese Thunderer.**Pagan Idols.*

136. RELIGION.

a. The four prevailing religions of the world are the Christian, Jewish, Mahometan, and Pagan.

b. *Pagans* are those who believe in many false gods, and in different nations worship the sun, stars, rivers, and even beasts, insects, and idols of wood and stone like those represented in the engraving.

c. They often torture themselves, destroy their children, and practise other cruel and wicked rites, to please their gods, and obtain forgiveness of their sins. (*See the engravings for HINDOOSTAN, THIBET, TONKIN, and POLYNESIA.*)

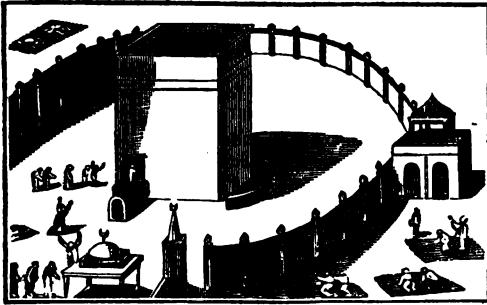
Pagan countries are distinguished on the Chart of the World by an altar.

MAHOMETANS.

d. *Mahometans* are those who believe in Mahomet, an impostor in Arabia, who lived 600 years after Christ, and pretended to be inspired.

e. He forbade idolatry and the worship of many gods. But he allowed some crimes, and promised the faithful a sensual Paradise hereafter.

Mahometan countries are distinguished on the Chart by a crescent, the standard of Mahomet.



Mahometan Pilgrims at the Temple of Mecca.

f. Mahomet commanded all his followers to go on a pilgrimage to the temple of Mecca, and to worship there.

JEWS.

g. The *Jews* are a people scattered among all nations, who believe in the Old Testament only, and expect a Saviour yet to come.

CHRISTIANS.

h. *Christians* are those, who believe in Jesus Christ as the Saviour.

i. There are three great divisions of Christians—Catholic, Greek, and Protestant Christians, each having peculiar doctrines and modes of worship.

j. Protestants are divided into various sects, of which the principal are Lutherans, Episcopalians (or the established church of England), Presbyterians, Independents, Baptists, Methodists, and Friends, or Quakers.

k. It is supposed, that there are more than 900 millions of people on the Earth. Of these, 500 millions are Pagans; 250 millions, Christians; 120 millions, Mahometans; and 8 or 10 millions, Jews.

l. The savage, barbarous, and half-civilized nations of the world, are either Pagans, or Mahometans. The Abyssinians profess to be Christians; but their religion is very corrupt.

m. Little settlements have been formed in many Pagan countries, called missionary stations; and missionaries have been sent to civilize and instruct the people, by different sects of Christians. Some tribes have thus been led to embrace Christianity, and have learned the arts of civilization, in Africa, North America, and Polynesia.

Christian countries are distinguished on the Chart of the World by a light cross, with the letter C, G, or P, near it, to indicate Catholic, Greek, or Protestant Christians. Missionary stations are denoted by a dark cross.

Questions. (II.)—What are the prevailing religions of the world? What are Pagans? What can you say of their rites? What countries of the world are chiefly Pagan? (*See the Chart.*) What are Mahometans? What pilgrimage did Mahomet require of his followers? What did he forbid, and what did he promise? In what countries of the world are Mahometans chiefly found? (*See the Chart.*) What are Jews? What are Christians? What are the great divisions of Christians? What countries of Europe and America are Catholic? What parts of Europe have the Greek religion? How are Protestants divided? What are the Protestant countries of Europe? What are those of America? What is supposed to be the number of each religion in the world? What is the religion of the savage, barbarous, and half-civilized nations? What has been done to instruct Pagan nations? What effect has been produced?

DESCRIPTION OF COUNTRIES.

EUROPE.

137. Europe is the smallest of the four principal divisions formerly termed the quarters of the globe, but the most thickly populated.

138. The extensive territory of the *Russian Empire* forms the eastern half of Europe. *Northern Europe* is occupied by the northern part of Russia, and by the ancient Scandinavia, comprising Finland, Sweden, Norway, and Denmark.

139. The *South of Europe* consists of three projections or peninsulas; the most eastern of which is Turkey, the ancient Greece; the middle is Italy; and the western is divided between Spain and Portugal.

140. In the *middle regions* of Europe we find the Netherlands and France upon the coast: the numerous states of Germany and the little republics of Switzerland border upon these on the East; and the powerful states of Prussia and Austria succeed, separating the rest of Europe from Russia.

141. On the *western coast* are the isles, which form the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland.

142. The climate of Europe is much milder than that of Asia and America in the same latitude, in consequence of its numerous inland seas, and the general cultivation of the soil.

143. In the countries of Europe lying north of 55° of latitude, the cold is very severe, and the inland seas are frozen over in the winter.

144. In the middle countries, between 45° and 55° , the climate is temperate, but the winters are cold.

145. In the southern countries snow seldom falls, and vegetables grow the greater part of the year.

146. Sciences, arts, and manufactures, have reached a higher degree of perfection in Europe than in any other part of the world.

147. All other civilized countries of the world were peopled from Europe; and all the European nations, except Germany, Prussia, Austria, Switzerland, and Italy, possess colonies in the other quarters of the globe.

148. There are many universities, of which the most celebrated are those of Cambridge and Oxford in England, Edinburgh in Scotland, Leyden in the Netherlands, Gottingen and Leipsic in Germany, Vienna in Austria, Bologna in Italy, and Salamanca in Spain.

149. There are few countries on the continent well provided with schools for the instruction of the poor; and in the Catholic countries the people are forbidden to read the Bible.

150. The lower classes on the continent are generally in a state of great ignorance and poverty. The higher classes are generally well educated and refined, but indolent and luxurious.

Questions. (I.)—What is the comparative size and population of Europe? How are eastern and northern Europe occupied? What countries in the south of Europe? What in the middle regions? What islands on the western coast? What is its climate, compared with that of America and Asia? What is the state of the arts and sciences? What are some of the principal universities? Are there generally schools for the poor? What is the character of the people?

Questions on the Chart of the World.

Civilization.—(I.) Are there any parts of Europe barbarous? What country is half-civilized? What are only civilized? What are enlightened?

Government.—(II.) What countries have absolute monarchies, or despotic governments? What country has a republican government? What countries have limited monarchies? How is Germany governed?

Religion.—(II.) What countries of Europe are Protestant? In what country does the Greek religion prevail? What country is Mahometan? What countries are Catholic entirely? What are divided between Protestant and Catholic?

Population.—(II.) What country of Europe has the largest number of inhabitants? What two are next? What is the population of the United Kingdom, including England, Wales, Scotland, and Ireland? What is that of each country? What countries have eleven millions of inhabitants? What have thirteen millions? What is the population of Turkey? Of the Netherlands? What countries have two or three millions of inhabitants? What coun-

tries have a smaller number? What country has the least number of inhabitants?

Questions on the map of Europe.

(I.) How is Europe bounded on the N., E., S., and W.? Mention particularly the seas on the South, and the mountains and rivers on the East. What divides it from Africa and Asia? What is the northern cape of Europe? What the most southern? Between what latitudes and longitudes does it lie? What capes are there in Spain? In Ireland? England? On the coast of the Mediterranean? What is the northern cape of Africa?

Seas, Gulfs, and Straits.—(I.) What four seas are there in the northern part of Europe? What two gulfs in the Baltic? What are the straits or sounds called, which lead into the Baltic Sea? What five seas are there in the South of Europe? What three gulfs in the Mediterranean? What straits lead into the Mediterranean? What countries are on the Baltic? On the North Sea? What on the Mediterranean? The Archipelago? Black Sea? What straits lead into the Sea of Marmora? What straits between England and France? What channels near the British Isles?

Mountains.—(I.) What three chains of mountains are in the northern part of Europe? In what direction do they run? What four chains are in the middle of Europe? What are the principal chains in the south of Europe?

(II.) Where is the Sierra Morena? What are the highest mountains in Europe? What chain is the longest? Describe the situation and height of Mount Hecla, in Iceland, Mount Vesuvius, in Italy, and Mount Etna, in Sicily.

Lakes.—I. What two remarkable lakes are in Sweden? What two in Russia? (II.) How large are they? (*See 63, b. &c.*)

Rivers.—I. What three rivers are in the North of Russia? What are the two chief rivers of Sweden? What four rivers empty themselves into the Baltic from the South? What river enters the Skaggerack from Norway? What two rivers of England empty themselves into the North Sea? (*The Tweed and the Forth empty themselves into it from Scotland.*) What four from the continent? (*The Rhine passes through Lake Constance in Switzerland.*)

What river empties itself into the British Channel? What two empty themselves into the Bay of Biscay? What five enter the

Atlantic from Spain? What two pass into the Mediterranean from Spain and France? (*The Rhone passes through the Lake of Geneva.*) What four enter the Black Sea?

(II.) Describe each of the rivers mentioned, beginning at the North, and proceeding along the coast, (*i. e. tell where it rises, what course it runs, where it empties itself, and what is its class and comparative size.*) What river is near Rome? What one enters the Gulf of Venice? Describe each. What branches has the Danube? What river empties itself into the Sea of Azof? Which is the largest river in Europe? Which are the two largest in the west of Europe?

Boundaries and Capitals.—(I.) What are the five countries of Europe lying N. of 55° latitude? What are the boundaries of each? What are the eight middle countries, between 55° and 45° ? What are the boundaries of each? What are the four S. of 45° , and their boundaries? What parts of Asia and America are in the same latitude with the northern countries of Europe? What with the middle and southern countries? What are the capitals of the five northern countries and Poland? What are the capitals of the eight middle countries, and of the four southern?

Islands.—(I.) What are the two largest islands West of Europe? What are the islands North of Europe? What are those North of Great Britain? West of Scotland? In the British Channel? In the Baltic Sea? What are the two largest in the Mediterranean?

(II.) What are those near Spain? Those near Italy? Those between Italy and Turkey? What one South of Sicily? What are the chief islands in and near the Archipelago?

Latitudes and Longitudes.—(II.) Mention three capitals nearly in the latitude of the Shetland Isles and Greenland? What four others are in that of London and the Straits of Belleisle in N. America? What capitals between 45° and 50° of latitude? What capitals nearly in the latitude of New York and Madrid? Trace the line of 36° latitude to the Caspian Sea, and mention the places and coasts on and near it.

Longitudes.—(II.) Find the longitudes of London—Petersburgh—Paris—Rome—Constantinople. About what time is it at St. Petersburg and Constantinople, when it is noon at London? (*See the chart of the world.*) What time at Rome, Venice, and Copenhagen? What at Brest and Madrid? What at Lisbon?

THE BRITISH ISLES,

OR

UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

151. The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland comprises these, and many small islands adjacent, while its dominion extends over many other countries in every quarter of the globe.

152. The British Isles are separated from the rest of Europe by the North sea and British Channel, which gives them a milder and damper climate than the Continent.

153. They have a fertile soil, and produce all the necessaries of life in sufficient abundance.

154. They abound in mines of coal, iron, copper, and lead; and almost all the tin, that is used by civilized nations, is obtained from the mines of Cornwall.

155. The coast is indented with numerous bays and harbours, which are never frozen in winter, and give these islands great advantages for commerce.

156. They contain a population of 21 millions; one half of whom are employed in trade and manufactures, and more than one quarter in agriculture.

157. The manufactures of woollen, cotton, cutlery, hardware, and pottery, excel those of any other nation in excellence and amount.

158. Their fisheries and commerce extend to every part of the globe, and supply them with all the luxuries of other countries.

159. These islands have long been distinguished for men of genius and learning, and for numerous inventions and discoveries in the sciences and arts. They are not less distinguished for the number of benevolent and charitable institutions for the relief of the poor and distressed.

Questions.—What does the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland comprise? What can you say of the British Isles? What are their soil and productions? What mines have they? What advantages for commerce? What is their population? Are the manufactures good? What can you say of their fisheries and commerce? How have these islands been distinguished? Have they many benevolent and charitable institutions?

Questions on the map. (1.)—In what direction from the continent of Europe are the British Isles? What waters separate them from it? What ocean surrounds them on other sides? Where do they approach nearest to the continent?

What ocean surrounds Ireland on three sides? What waters separate it from England? What is the capital of Ireland? What islands lie between Ireland and England?

How is Great Britain bounded, that is, what waters lie on the North, East, South, and West sides of it?

In bounding countries let the pupil always proceed in the same order—N. E. S. and W.

What two kingdoms are there on the island of Great Britain? How is England bounded? What is the capital? What islands lie on the southern coast? Where is Wales, and how is it bounded?

How is Scotland bounded? What is the capital? What islands lie North of Scotland? What islands West of it?

What are the most northern capes of Great Britain? What is the most western cape of England? What are the most western of Wales? Mention some of the bays on the western coast of Britain? Mention some of the capes and bays on the eastern coast? Mention some of the capes and bays on the coast of Ireland?

160.

a. Great Britain is a limited monarchy, comprising the three united kingdoms of England, Scotland, and Ireland, and the principality of Wales, under the government of the same king and parliament.

b. The Parliament is composed of a House of Lords, consisting of Peers and Bishops; and a House of Commons elected every seven years.

c. The king and Parliament make the laws and impose taxes.

The king appoints and pays the judges, and the officers of state, and of the army and navy.

d. This kingdom was one of the smallest in Europe ; but in consequence of the intelligence and industry of its inhabitants it has surpassed every other in arts, manufactures, and wealth ; and has the most extensive commerce, and the largest navy in the world.

e. Hence it has become one of the most powerful of kingdoms ; and the British Empire now includes one third of North America, and a large part of Hindoostan, colonies in Africa, New Holland, and the East and West Indies, and many important islands and forts in every quarter of the Globe.

f. The whole kingdom of Great Britain and her dependencies contain more than 140 millions of people, of various languages and complexions.

g. The army consists of 100,000 men, and the navy in 1826 contained 800 ships of war.

h. The annual expenses of the government are about 24 millions of pounds sterling.

i. The wars in which this country has been engaged have caused a debt of 800 millions of pounds, and the annual interest paid for this is about 30 millions.

k. The greater part of this expense is paid from the excise duties, the remainder from other taxes, and from duties on imported goods.

l. The value of goods annually exported is about 80 millions of pounds, and that of imports about 30 millions.

m. The chief exports are manufactured goods, of which cotton forms two thirds in value. The chief imports are wool, raw cotton, sugar, tea, and other products of warm climates.

Questions.—What is the government of Great Britain ? Describe the parliament. Who make laws, and who appoints the judges, and chief officers, civil and military ? Is this a large kingdom ? Is it powerful ? What is the population of the whole empire ? How large are the army and navy ? What are the annual expenses of government ? How large is the national debt, and what has produced it ? How are these expenses paid ? What is the amount of exports and imports ? What are the chief articles of export and import ?

ENGLAND AND WALES.

*Bridge, and Canal, in England.*

161. England is the largest and most populous and fertile portion of the British Isles.

Its surface is generally level or waving, with a fertile soil, and watered by numerous streams.

A ridge of mountains of moderate height passes from Cumberland through the Northern counties to the Southern part of Wales, and renders these parts of the kingdom rough or mountainous. There are also some barren moors and heaths of considerable extent in other parts of the kingdom.

162. The climate is mild and moist, and produces a beautiful deep verdure, which is scarcely seen in other countries; but it is less favourable for the ripening of grain and fruits.

The land is highly cultivated in general; divided by green hedges; and adorned with neat cottages; and elegant country seats, which render it one of the most beautiful countries of Europe.

163. England is traversed by numerous streams,

and these are connected by a great number of canals, some of them passing through mountains and over rivers, which give it a very extensive inland navigation.

It is also remarkable for the excellence of its roads and bridges, and for the convenience and expedition of travelling.

164.

a. England is very thickly settled, and the peasantry are generally honest and industrious.

The merchants of England are distinguished for integrity and wealth, the mechanics for their skill, and the sailors and soldiers for their bravery.

The Welsh peasantry are remarkable for their industry, intelligence, and honesty.

b. England surpasses the other portions of the United Kingdom in commerce, improvements, and wealth.

c. It contains the two most celebrated universities, Cambridge and Oxford, and several public schools of great antiquity and reputation.

d. England is divided into 40 counties, and Wales into 12.

e. In many of the counties there are peculiar dialects, which a stranger cannot understand, and in Wales the Welsh language is spoken almost exclusively.

Questions. (II.)—Which is the largest and most populous portion of the British Isles? What is the surface and soil of England? What mountains has it? What is the climate? Is the land well cultivated? Are there many streams and canals? What can you say of the roads and bridges? Is it thickly settled? What is the character of the people? What of the Welsh? In what does England excel other parts of the kingdom? What universities has it? How many counties are there in England and in Wales? What differences of language are there in the counties?

Questions on the maps. (I.)—What are the boundaries of England? What is the capital? Where is Wales, and how is it bounded?

What river and hills separate England from Scotland? What other rivers do you find in the north of England? What place is

at the mouth of the Tweed? What city on the river Eden on the western coast? What large town on the Tyne? What on the Humber? Which is the largest river in the middle of England? Where does it empty itself? On what river is Liverpool? Which are the three largest rivers in the south of England? What city is on the Thames? What on the Severn? Where does the southern Ouse empty itself? Point out the following ports on the southern coast, Falmouth, Plymouth, Portsmouth, Southampton? What place is on the straits of Dover? What town in France is opposite to it?

Questions. (II.)—What are the six northern counties of Wales? What are the six southern? Which lie on the Bristol channel? Which on Cardigan bay? Which on the Irish sea? Which are inland? Mention the principal rivers and towns in the northern counties? In the southern?

What are the six northern counties of England? What are the eight eastern counties between these and the Thames, four large ones on the coast, and four smaller inland? What are the three south-eastern counties? What are the three south-western? What are the four south of the Thames between these? Which four counties border upon Wales? Mention the twelve midland counties in the following order—Three central counties between Hereford and Huntingdon—Four South of these—Five North of these. Which is the most northern county of England? Which is the most western and southern? Which are the two most eastern? Which appears to be the largest? In what county is London? What six counties are nearest around London?

Mention the rivers of each of the northern counties?

Where does the Trent rise? Through what counties does it pass, and where does it empty itself? What branches has it? Describe the source, course, and emptying of the southern Ouse? What branches has it? What rivers lie between the Ouse and the Trent? Where does the Thames rise, and empty itself, and what is its course? What counties lie N. and S. of it? What towns are on its banks? What branches has it? Describe the Severn in the same manner? What river empties itself near the Thames? What rivers empty themselves on the southern coasts? What towns are upon them? Where does

the Wye rise, and empty itself? What river is there in North Wales?

Mention the principal towns in each of the six northern counties of England? In the eight eastern? In the four bordering on Wales? In the three south-western? In the three south-eastern? In the four southern between these? In Worcester, Warwick, and Northampton? In the five midland counties North of these? In the four midland counties South of these?

165. CITIES, TOWNS, AND ISLANDS, OF ENGLAND.

London is the capital of the British Empire. It is admirably situate for commerce, and is the richest, most populous, and most commercial city of the civilized world.

Five miles below it is *Greenwich*, the seat of the Royal Observatory, from which longitude is reckoned. It is also celebrated for the Royal Hospital for disabled seamen. *York* is the metropolis of the North of England, and the second city in dignity. It is celebrated for its magnificent minster, or ancient cathedral. *Liverpool* is next to London in commerce. It is the principal seat of the trade with America, and has been rapidly increasing in population and wealth. *Bristol* holds the next rank in commerce. *Hull*, the chief port on the eastern coast north of London, is the principal channel of trade to the north-eastern and midland districts of England. It is also extensively engaged in the Greenland fishery. *Newcastle* on the Tyne is particularly celebrated for its coal-trade. It is also employed in foreign commerce, and in the Greenland fishery. *Exeter* is a commercial town, situate on the southern coast, the metropolis and chief emporium of the West of England. *Yarmouth*, at the mouth of the Yare, on the eastern coast of Norfolk, is important as a seaport, and has the most extensive fishery on the English coast.

Naval Stations.—*Portsmouth* is the chief naval station of Great Britain; and has a fine harbour, capable of receiving the whole navy. The road of Spithead, between the harbour and the Isle of Wight, is the chief rendezvous of the navy. *Plymouth*, at the mouth of the Plym, is second only to Portsmouth as a naval station. *Chatham* is also a naval port of consequence.

Only a few of the *manufacturing towns* can be enumerated.

Manchester is the second place for population, and first in manufactures, especially those of cotton. *Birmingham* is particularly remarkable for its metallic articles, and has been styled "the toyshop of Europe." *Leeds* is distinguished for its cloths—*Sheffield* for its cutlery—*Norwich* for its worsted stuffs—*Leicester* and *Nottingham* for stockings and hosiery—*Worcester* for its woollens and especially for its porcelain—and *Kidderminster* for its carpets.

Of the places of fashionable resort, *Brighton* is the most celebrated place for sea-bathing; *Ramsgate*, *Margate*, and *Scarborough* are also much frequented. Among the mineral springs which collect visitors *Bath* contains the most distinguished, and has become one of the most elegant and dissipated cities in England. *Cheltenham*, *Clifton*, *Tunbridge-Wells*, *Buxton*, *Matlock*, and *Harrowgate*, have thousands of visitants annually.

Oxford and *Cambridge* are celebrated for their universities, and owe their population and importance to them. *Oxford* appears like a city of palaces. *Cambridge* is much inferior in elegance. *Windsor* is distinguished for its magnificent castle, which has long been a favourite residence of the English monarchs. *Canterbury* was the first seat of Christianity in England; and is now the residence of an archbishop, who is primate of all England. *Caernarvon* and *Caermarthen* are the principal towns of Wales.

Of the islands on the coast, the *Isle of Wight* is remarkable for its fertility and the beauty of its scenery. *Anglesea*, on the coast of Wales, is distinguished for its copper mines. The *Isle of Man* contains a singular people, tenacious of their ancient customs, and in part governed by their own laws. The *Scilly Islands* are a numerous, rocky group, off the Land's End, only a few of which are inhabited.

SCOTLAND.

*Mountains in Scotland.*

166. Scotland is a rough and mountainous country in the North, with only a few fertile valleys. The middle division is intersected by the Grampian Hills, from 40 to 60 miles wide, which furnish good pasturage. The southern and south-eastern parts spread into more fertile plains.

Rivers are numerous, but short and rapid, and unfit for navigation. This country is peculiarly celebrated for the grandeur and wildness of its scenery.

167. The climate is severe, and storms are often dreadful. Neither climate nor soil is favourable to tillage, and the greater part of Scotland is devoted to pasturage. The grain chiefly cultivated consists of oats, rye, and barley.

168. The people are divided into two great classes. The Highland Scotch devote themselves to the keeping of flocks and cattle. They are remarkable for their bold spirit, as well as for simplicity and hospitality of manners.

The Lowland Scotch are intelligent, enterprising,

and industrious, and superior to most nations of Europe in education and integrity. They hold a high rank in literature.

Agriculture has been much improved of late years in Scotland; manufactures are in a flourishing state, especially those of cotton; and the commerce and fisheries are important.

Questions. (I.)—What is the face of the country in Scotland? Are rivers numerous? What can you say of the scenery? What is the climate? What kinds of grain are chiefly cultivated? How are the people divided? What is the character of the Highlanders? What is that of the Lowland Scotch? What is the state of agriculture, manufactures, and commerce?

Questions on the map. (I.)—How is Scotland bounded? What is its capital?

What Firths are on the eastern coast of Scotland? What on the western coast? What is the principal river emptying itself on the western coast? What towns lie upon it? What lake empties itself into it from the North? What other lakes are there in the West? What canal is there in the northern part of Scotland, and what lakes does it pass through? What rivers empty themselves on the eastern coast?

In what hills does the Tay rise? What towns are there upon it? Where does the Forth rise? What towns are situated on the Forth? What towns on the eastern coast have universities? What one on the Clyde?

Where are the Shetland Isles, and which are the principal islands and towns? Where are the Orkneys? What are the chief islands and towns in these? What are the chief islands on the western coast?

Questions. (II.)—What are the nine counties on the mainland of Scotland, North of the Grampian Hills? What are the four on the northern and western coasts, and five on the eastern coast? Which is the largest? Which are the most northern? What are the middle counties between the Grampian Hills, and the Canal and Firth of Forth? the two on the western coast, the four inland, of which two are very small (*Aberdeen and Clackmannon*), and the three on the eastern coast?

Which five of the southern counties lie upon the Forth and Clyde? Which three lie on the western coast? Which three border upon England? What two counties lie between Edinburgh and Dumfries?

The county of Edinburgh is also called Mid Lothian; Haddington, East Lothian; and Linlithgow, West Lothian. The Orkney and Shetland Isles, and the Island of Bute, are two separate counties.

Mention the rivers and chief towns of each of the northern counties? Of the middle counties, and of the southern?

169. CITIES, TOWNS, AND ISLANDS, OF SCOTLAND.

Edinburgh is the metropolis of Scotland, and has long been distinguished as the seat of science and literature. It has few manufactures; but it carries on an important trade through *Leith*, its seaport, which is about two miles distant.

Glasgow, on the Clyde, is the first city of Scotland in population, and in commercial importance. It is regularly built, and flourishing in manufactures as well as in trade. It has much intercourse with the West Indies and America. *Port Glasgow* is 20 miles farther down the river. *Paisley* is noted for its cotton and muslin manufactures; which give employ to more than 30,000 persons in the town and vicinity. *Greenock* is the chief seaport of Scotland. Its commerce is extensive, and its population has increased with great rapidity. *Dundee* is a commodious port, and is flourishing in manufactures and trade.

Aberdeen is the chief town in the north of Scotland. It consists of two parts—the new town, a large and populous seaport—and the old town about a mile from the sea, distinguished for the university of King's College. *Perth* is one of the best built towns of Scotland, except Edinburgh. *St. Andrews* has an university. *Berwick* is a border-town, upon the Tweed. *Stirling* is built on a steep hill, about 33 miles north of Edinburgh. It has been distinguished as the residence of some of the Scottish kings.

The coast of Scotland is lined with numerous islands, most of them rocky and rough.

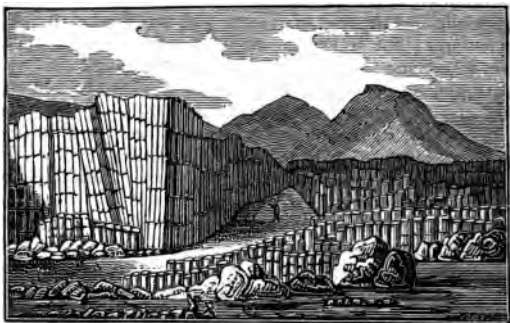
The *Hebrides*, or *Western Isles*, are 300 in number, ex-

tending 180 miles along the western coast of Scotland. They are estimated to contain 70,000 inhabitants.

The *Orkneys*, on the North, comprise 26 islands, inhabited by an industrious people. *Kirkwall*, the chief town, is distinguished for an ancient, stately cathedral, dedicated to St. Magnus.

The *Shetland*, or *Zetland Isles*, are the most northern Scottish isles, 86 in number, of which 40 are inhabited by 21,000 people. 70 or 80,000 sheep are fed here, and wool and fish are exported. The aspect of these islands is peculiarly rugged and bleak ; and the precipitous rocks on the coast present the most sublime scenery.

IRELAND.



Giant's Causeway.

170. Ireland is destitute of any extensive or considerable ranges of mountains, but many are distributed in small groups. Its surface is uneven, with hills of some height, but easy of ascent and cultivation. It is generally well watered and fertile. The bogs and morasses, which cover one tenth of the surface, are unfit for cultivation.

171. Ireland abounds in lakes ; and every part of the country has easy access to the sea. Its coast has

many fine harbours, and is well adapted to commerce. The climate is very mild and moist, and produces a beautiful and continued verdure.

On the northern coast of Ireland is the Giant's Causeway, composed of regular natural pillars resembling hewn stone.

172.

a. The peasantry are in extreme ignorance and poverty, and one seventh of the houses are inhabited by *paupers*.

b. Their cabins and modes of living are generally wretched; but they are remarkable for their contentment and gaiety in the midst of privations.

c. Tillage is not understood. The implements of husbandry are very rude and ill constructed. Potatoes and oats are the principal crops raised for food by the poor. The soil is best adapted to pasturage. The Irish are most successful in grazing and dairy husbandry, and produce the finest beef and butter that are found in commerce.

d. The manufacture of linen and muslin is carried on to a great extent, and these are important articles of export.

e. The commerce of Ireland is chiefly with England.

Questions. (I.)—Has Ireland any mountains? What is its surface? Is it fertile? Has it many lakes and harbours? What is the climate? What is the character of the Irish peasantry? What can you say of their cabins? What proportion of the people are catholics? What is the state of agriculture? What is the soil best fitted for? What can you say of the manufactures and commerce of Ireland?

Questions on the map. (I.)—How is Ireland bounded? What is the capital, and where is it?

What is the largest river of Ireland? What rivers empty themselves on the southern coast? Which is the northernmost province of Ireland? What lakes are there in it? Which is the easternmost? Which is the southernmost? Which is the westernmost? What lakes are in it? What towns are there on the River Shannon? What seaports are there on the eastern coast of Ireland? What on the southern coast? What canals do you find in the middle of Ireland?

Questions. (II.)—What are the counties of Ulster—four in the North, and five in the South? What are the four northern counties of Leinster? the three middle counties? and the five southern? Which are the three southern counties of Munster? Which the two northern? Which are the two southern counties of Connaught? Which the four northern?

Mention the principal rivers and towns of each county in Ulster—in Leinster—in Munster—in Connaught.

173. CITIES AND TOWNS OF IRELAND.

Dublin is the second city of the British Isles in extent and population. It is the emporium of Irish commerce, and the seat of government. Its university is celebrated.

Cork is the second city in Ireland, and possesses a more extensive foreign trade than any other port. Its harbour is safe and spacious. *Limerick*, on the Shannon, is next in rank; and is one of the most flourishing towns in the island. Its manufactures are prosperous, and it has a large share of the internal and foreign trade of the country. *Waterford* is a populous and commercial city. *Belfast* is also important for its commerce, and is the chief seat of the linen trade.

Kilkenny is a neat town, remarkable for its quarries of white and black marble of great beauty. *Galway*, *Londonderry*, and *Drogheda* are flourishing places of trade.

174. FOREIGN BRITISH POSSESSIONS.

In addition to her Indian, American, and Continental territories, Great Britain has a number of insulated foreign possessions, which may most properly be described in this place.

Guernsey, *Jersey*, *Alderney*, and *Sark*, are small islands lying on the coast of France. The inhabitants generally speak the old Norman French; and have more resemblance to the French than to the English. Their internal government is regulated by their own laws.

Heligoland is a barren rock, opposite the mouth of the Elbe, inhabited by 200 Danish fishermen, and occupied by a British garrison, as a place of trade in war.

Malta is a celebrated island of the Mediterranean, formerly possessed by the Knights of Malta. It is a mass of rocks, co-

vered with a light soil; but it contains a population of 6,000 to the square mile. It is a very important place of rendezvous and deposit for the commerce and navy of Great Britain.

Gibraltar, the celebrated fortress at the entrance of the Mediterranean Sea, is also possessed by the British. It is a mere rock, but has been made an almost impregnable fortress. It is the key of the Mediterranean, and a highly valuable possession to the British Empire.

The rock is surrounded by fortifications and penetrated by galleries furnished with cannon. The town is situated on the declivity, near the foot of the rock. It is governed entirely as a military post; but it is a free port, and a place of great trade. It is the resort of merchants from almost every part of the Mediterranean and of Europe, and ten languages are spoken in its streets.

St. Helena is an elevated rock in the Atlantic Ocean, off the coast of Africa, which has been formed by the British into an impregnable fortress. It is important as a place of refreshment and rendezvous for the East India ships; and has lately been distinguished as the prison of the Emperor Napoleon.

Let the pupil point to each of these places on the map, and describe their situation from it.

NORTHERN COUNTRIES OF EUROPE.

Russia—Poland—Sweden—Norway—Denmark.

175. The northern countries of Europe lie between 55° and 72° of north latitude. The inland portions are very cold, but the parts near the ocean are temperate.

176. They generally produce some fruits, and a sufficient supply of grain and vegetables; but they are best fitted for pasturage.

177. In Norway, and other parts in or near the Frigid Zone, the inhabitants are often obliged to eat the inner bark of trees, for want of grain.

178. In many parts of these countries, the Sun sets so late and rises so early in summer, that the people can

see to read and write at midnight. In winter, they have only an hour or two of light at noon.

179. These countries have usually neither spring nor autumn. The change is sudden from winter to summer, and grain is reaped in a few weeks after it is sown.

The people are generally brave, hardy, and industrious, and more virtuous than in other parts of Europe.

Questions. (I.)—Where do the five northern countries of Europe lie? In what zone, and in what part of it are most of them? What is the general climate of this part of the Temperate Zone? (*See p. 30.*) Is any part of them in the Frigid Zone? What then will be their climate? (*See p. 30.*) What do they generally produce? What do the people often eat in some of these countries.

II. What can you say of their nights? What of their seasons? What is the character of the people?

RUSSIA IN EUROPE.



Russian Village in Winter.

180. Russia is the largest country in Europe, extending into the middle and southern parts of it, but not thickly inhabited. It is intensely cold and unpro-

ductive in the North, but temperate and productive in the South. It is generally very level.

The common people of Russia are generally ignorant and almost barbarous; and most of them are slaves to the nobles. Great efforts are now made to improve them.

The Russian empire embraces nearly half of Europe, with a large part of Asia, and extends into the northern parts of North America.

Most of the villages in Russia consist of timber huts, and have a wretched appearance. Sledges are used for travelling during the winter.

Questions on the map. (I.)—Describe the boundaries, capital and rivers of Russia.

(II.) What two towns are on the White sea? What is their class and population? What place is at the head of the Baltic Sea? Describe the two principal places in Finland. What rivers are in Finland? What town lies W. of Petersburg, and is its seaport? What other seaports are on the Baltic S. of Petersburg, and how situate? Describe the situation and size of Moscow. What three places are on the Volga N. of Moscow, and of what size? What three places are between Moscow and the Dnieper? What two on the Dnieper? What two ports on the Black Sea? At what places in Russia do you find universities? (*Prod.* 176.)

Spitzbergen and Nova Zembla are frozen, uninhabited islands, belonging to Russia. Where are they situate?

POLAND.

181. Poland was formerly an independent kingdom, and was celebrated for the salt mines of Cracow.

It was divided some years since between Austria, Prussia, and Russia. The greater part of it is now under the government of the Emperor of Russia.

It is a cold, but level and productive country. The people are generally rude and ignorant.

Questions on the map.—(1.) What rivers are found in Poland?

Which of them are connected by canals? Where is Warsaw, the capital?

II. What two places are East of this? Where is Cracow? What universities do you find.

SWEDEN.



A mine in Sweden.

182. Sweden is a cold country, rugged and mountainous in the western parts, but level on the shores of the Baltic.

The great wealth of Sweden consists in its numerous mines, which produce iron and copper of the best quality.

The Swedes have public schools, and are generally well informed and honest, as well as intelligent and sprightly.

Questions on the map. (I.)—How is Sweden bounded? What mountains separate it from Norway? What river from Russia?

(II.) What two lakes are there in the southern part of Sweden? What is the chief river? What is the capital of Sweden? (*It is built on several islands in the Lake Malar.*) What other seaport of importance is there on the eastern coast? What one on the western? What other important places are there? What university is there in Sweden? (*Climate 143—Prod. 176.*)

NORWAY.

*North Cape at Midnight.*

183. Norway is a very cold, mountainous, barren country, subject to the king of Sweden.

Its coast is steep and rocky, like that at the North Cape represented in the engraving. In the northern parts, the sun shines at midnight during part of the summer.

The Norwegians are honest and hospitable, but rude and illiterate. They are supported chiefly by hunting, fishing, and cutting timber for exportation.

Questions on the map. (I.)—How is Norway bounded? What are the northern and southern capes? What islands on the N. W. coast? What is the chief river? The capital?

(II.) What is the most northern town? Describe the principal places in the South. What universities or colleges are there?

LAPLAND.

184. Lapland is a frozen, mountainous, desolate region, occupying the northern parts of Russia, Sweden, and Norway.

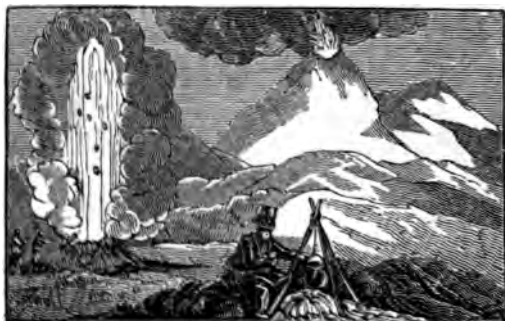
The Laplanders are dwarfish, ignorant, superstitious, and barbarous.

They use reindeer as their beasts of burden, live on their milk and flesh, and dress in their skins.

Questions on the map. (1.)—What river is there in Lapland? What village deserving of notice?

DENMARK.

Including Iceland and the Faroe Isles.



The Great Geyser of Iceland.

185. Denmark is a level and fertile country, with a damp but healthy climate.

The Danes are an honest, industrious people, but not distinguished for enterprise or learning.

The Eyder is the only river of importance in Denmark. It falls into the North Sea, and is connected with the Baltic by the canal of Kiel.

Iceland, belonging to Denmark, is remarkable for its volcano, and for the hot springs called the Geysers, which spout hot water often to the height of 90 feet.

Questions on the map. (1.)—How is Denmark bounded? What islands belong to it? What is the capital? (*It is on the island of Zealand.*)

II. Where is Elsinore? Where is Altona? and how large? What great seaport is near it? What university do you find? (*Kiel also has a university.*) (*Clim. 175—Prod. 176.*)

MIDDLE COUNTRIES OF EUROPE.

The Netherlands—Germany—Prussia—Austria—Switzerland—France.

186. The middle countries of Europe extend from about 45° to 55° of north latitude. The southern part of Russia is also in the same latitude.

187. The climate in most parts of these countries is temperate; but in the northern parts the winters are very cold.

188. They produce excellent grain and vegetables, and many fine fruits in abundance.

189. The southern parts abound in grapes, which furnish the people with wine for common use.

190. The people are of various characters, but generally active and intelligent.

191. Most of them excel other nations of Europe in manufactures and learning; but they are less hardy and virtuous than in some of the northern countries.

Questions. (1.)—In what latitude are the middle countries of Europe? What countries are in the northern part, and what in the southern of this division? What part of Russia is in the same latitude? What is the climate of these countries? What do they produce? What fruit abounds in the southern parts? What is the character of the people? In what do they excel other nations of Europe?

KINGDOM OF THE NETHERLANDS.

Including Holland and the Netherlands.*Canals in the Netherlands.*

192. The Kingdom of the Netherlands is a flat, moist, and highly cultivated country, with a cold, and damp, but healthy climate. The people are honest, and remarkable for industry, frugality, and neatness.

This country is generally lower than the sea and rivers. It is drained by means of numerous canals, which are also used instead of roads.

The northern part of this kingdom was formerly called Holland, and the southern part Flanders, or the Netherlands.

Questions on the map.—(1.) How are the Netherlands bounded? What rivers pass through them? What is the capital?

II. Where is the Hague? What two other cities are there in the South?

GERMANY.

193. Germany is an extensive country in the centre of Europe, remarkable for its division into many states, in which the same language is spoken.

194. Germany is a productive country. It is celebrated for the number of its learned men and authors, and the perfect state of the arts and sciences.

The people are distinguished for their gravity, industry, and perseverance.

195. Austria and Prussia are among the confederate states of Germany, but are now become powerful nations, and will be described separately from the inferior states.

GERMAN STATES.

196. The German States include four kingdoms, thirty-four smaller states, and four free cities.—The following are the principal.

<i>In the South.</i>	<i>In the middle.</i>	<i>In the North.</i>
K. of Bavaria.	K. of Saxony.	K. of Hanover.
K. of Wurtemberg.	Saxon States.	D. of Mecklenburg.
Duchy of Baden.	Hessian States.	D. of Oldenburg.
	City of Frankfort.	D. of Brunswick.

The king of England is king of Hanover.

Questions on the map (1.)—How are the German States bounded? What states are included? What rivers pass through them? In what part of Germany is Bavaria? What are the two principal places in Bavaria? Where is Wurtemberg, and what is its chief city? Where is Saxony, and what is its chief city? Where is Hanover, and what is its chief city?

II. Where are the free cities, Frankfort, Bremen, Hamburg, and Lubec? What other city do you find, celebrated for a university? (*Clim.* 187—*Prod.* 188.)

PRUSSIA.



Berlin and the royal Palace.

197. Prussia is generally a level country, with a cold, moist climate. It is remarkable for the amber found on its shores.

A part of this kingdom lies upon the river Rhine, separated from the rest by the German States.

Berlin, the capital of Prussia, is one of the finest cities in Europe. It contains the palace of the king.

The Prussians are chiefly distinguished as a military nation.

Questions on the map. (1.)—How is Prussia bounded? What three rivers belong to it? What large river passes through it? Describe the capital.

II. Where are Königsburgh and Dantzic? What city is on the Oder? What part of Germany belongs to Prussia? Where are the universities of Prussia? (*Clim.* 187—*Prod.* 188.)

AUSTRIA.

198. The Austrian empire consists of six separate governments united under one monarch. In extent and population it nearly resembles France. Its soil and climate are generally good, and it is richer in mines than any other country of Europe.

The mines of quicksilver are used as prisons for criminals.

This empire embraces a mixed mass of nations, differing in origin, language, religion, and customs, and having little intercourse with each other.

It comprises a large number of Italians and Swiss, in the South, and Germans in the North. The greater part of the population are Sclavonians, resembling the Russians; and some are scarcely civilized. Lombardy is the most populous and fertile part of the empire, Hungary is the most extensive province.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Austria bounded? What rivers are there? What mountains? What are the chief divisions of Austria? Where is the capital?

(II.) Where is Presburgh? What two cities are below it on the Danube? What two North of Vienna? What one in the N. E.? Where is Trieste? Where is Inspruck? Where is Ragusa? What three Italian cities now belong to Austria? What universities are there in Austria? (*Clim.* 187—*Prod.* 188, 189.)

SWITZERLAND.



Lucerne in Switzerland.

199. Switzerland is a cold, mountainous, and rough country, but the valleys are productive.

It is remarkable for the Alps, the loftiest mountains in Europe, and for its beautiful lakes.

Avalanches, or immense masses of snow, sometimes fall from the Alps, which bury houses and even whole villages.

The Swiss are generally well educated, and are remarkable for their bravery, industry, and virtue.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Switzerland bounded? What two large rivers rise in it, and through what lakes do they pass? (See 63. d.) What are the places of most note in it?

(II.) (Cataracts, 60. a.—Lakes, 63. c.)

FRANCE.



Vineyard in France.

200. France is a level fertile country, with a temperate, dry, and healthful climate, and yields all the necessities of life in abundance.

The northern parts are as cold as England. The middle regions abound in vineyards, which furnish wine for the common drink of the people, and a great quantity for the use of foreign nations. The southern parts resemble Southern Europe in the heat of their climate, and produce olives and figs.

The French are gay, polished, active, industrious, and celebrated for their ingenuity and skill in the arts and sciences.

The manufactures of France are numerous and valuable, and its trade is important; but in both respects it is surpassed by England.

It is the second kingdom of Europe in population, and the third in extent. Its army is powerful, and its navy respectable. The island of Corsica belongs to France.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is France bounded? What three rivers are there in the West? Describe the capital. What two other places are on the Seine, and where? What town is nearest England?

(II.) What city is near the northern boundary? Where is Strasburgh? What is the most western city in France? What three cities are there on the Loire? What remarkable seaport is on the Garonne? Where is Rochelle? Where is Bayonne? What two cities are between the bay of Biscay and the gulf of Lyons? Where does the Canal Royal pass? What city is on the Rhone? What mountains are West of it? What two seaports are on the Mediterranean? Where is Corsica? What universities has France? (*Clim.* 187—*Prod.* 188, 189.)

SOUTHERN COUNTRIES OF EUROPE.

Spain—Portugal—Italy—Turkey.

201. The southern countries of Europe extend from about 35° to 45° of north latitude. They have very warm and dry climates. In most of them, snow seldom falls except on the highlands, and vegetables continue green through the winter.

202. They abound in the finest grain, vines, and olives, and produce oranges, lemons, figs, and other fruits of warm climates.

203. The people are generally indolent; and are less virtuous, and less distinguished for learning and improvements, than other nations of Europe.

Bread, vegetables, and fruits, with wine and oil, are the principal food of the common people in these countries.

Questions.—(I.) Which are the southern countries of Europe?

What is their situation and climate? What can you say of their winters? What are their chief productions? What is the general character of the inhabitants, compared with that of other nations of Europe? What are the principal articles of food?

SPAIN.



A Bull Fight.

204. Spain is a hot and dry, but fertile country. (*Cli.* 201.) The interior is high land, and has cold winters.

The Spaniards are haughty and bigoted, but brave and generous.

It is a favourite amusement, both of males and females in Spain, to attend bull fights. Almost every town has a public place for this purpose.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Spain bounded? What is the chief river on the East? What rivers on the West and South? Describe the capital. What two capes are on the North? What three seaports?

(II.) Where is Valladolid? What two principal cities are North of the Douro? Where is Salamanca? What two cities are on the Ebro? Where is the British fortress of Gibraltar? Name five seaports on the Mediterranean, beginning at the South. What two cities are on the Guadalquivir? What cities between this river and the Tagus? What chains of mountains has Spain? What three islands are on the coast? Where are the universities of Spain? Where is Cadiz? (*Prod.* 202.)

PORTUGAL.



Treading out grain in Portugal.

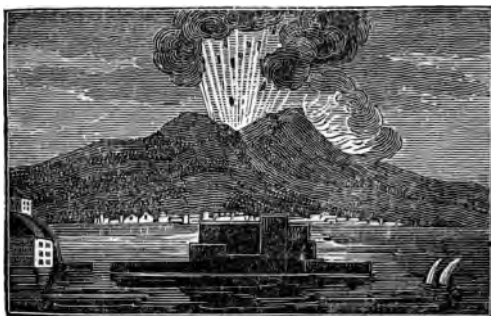
205. Portugal is a warm, dry, and fruitful country, but poorly cultivated. (*Cli.* 201.)

The people are friendly and hospitable, but generally superstitious, haughty, and revengeful.

The Portuguese are so inattentive to improvements, that they still tread out grain with oxen, as was done in ancient times.

Questions on the map.—(1.) How is Portugal bounded? What rivers pass through it? Where is the capital? What two cities are in the North? What port is in the southern part? What cape on the South? What university in Portugal? (*Prod.* 202.)

ITALY,
Including Sicily and Sardinia.



Mount Vesuvius.

206. Italy was the country of the ancient Romans, and abounds with the ruins of their cities and buildings.

It has a fertile soil and a delightful climate. (*See 201.*)

The Italians are a polished people, distinguished for their skill in music, painting, and sculpture. In the northern parts they are industrious; in the southern parts, indolent; and generally they are deficient in education and morality.

In the South of Italy is the kingdom of Naples, including Sicily. In the middle are the Roman states; and the grand duchy of Tuscany. In the North West are the small duchies of Modena, Parma, and Lucca, and the kingdom of Sardinia, which includes the island of Sardinia. Lombardy belongs to the Austrian empire.

The kingdom of Naples is remarkable for two ancient volcanoes; Vesuvius, near the city of Naples; and Etua, in Sicily. (*See 50, a, b, c.*)

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Italy bounded? What river empties itself into the gulf of Venice? What mountains run through Italy? Where is the kingdom of Naples? What is the capital of this kingdom? What volcano is near this city? Where is Sicily? What volcano is there in it? What are three of the principal cities of Sicily? Where are the Roman States? On what river does Rome stand?

(II.) What is the size of Rome? Where is Bologna? Where is St. Marino? (*It is an independent republic of only 7000 people.*) Where is Tuscany? What are the chief cities? What island is on the coast? Where is the kingdom of Sardinia? What is the capital? What seaport of note? What is the chief city on the island of Sardinia? To what nation does Corsica belong? Where do you find universities in Italy? Where are Parma and Modena? To what empire does Lombardy belong? (*See 198. Prod. 202.*)

TURKEY.



Ruins in Greece.

207. The southern part of Turkey was the ancient Greece, and abounds in the remains of Grecian buildings and sculpture, which the Turks destroy.

Turkey is a warm, productive country, but poorly cultivated, and inhabited by Greeks and Turks. (*See 201.*)

The Turks are generally bigoted; ignorant, and vicious, but honest. The Greeks are more lively and ingenious, and are Christians. They are now engaged in war to obtain independence.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Turkey bounded? What are the principal rivers in it? What chain of mountains? What is the capital? Which way from it is Adrianople?

(II.) What places are on the Danube? In what divisions of Turkey are Jassy and Bucharest? Where is Sophia? Salonica? Where is Greece? What four places are in the south of Turkey? What is the name of the southern peninsula? What city in the N. W. part of Turkey? What sea and straits between Constantinople and the Archipelago? What large island south of the Archipelago? What are the six principal islands in the Archipelago? (*Prod.* 202.)

REPUBLIC OF THE IONIAN ISLES.

208. The Islands of Corfu, Cefalonia, Zante, Cerigo, and some others, form the Republic of the Ionian Isles. They are inhabited by Greeks under the protection of Great Britain.

They have a fine climate and fertile soil, and export wine, oil, and dried currants.

Questions on the map.—(I.) Where are the Ionian islands? Mention the principal, beginning at the North.

209. TRAVELS ON THE MAP OF EUROPE.

In travelling through Europe you will find numerous cities, which abound with magnificent buildings; but you will see much poverty, misery, and vice.

What is the largest city in Europe? What shall you find worthy of notice in travelling through England? (*See* 162—3.) In what direction is Edinburgh from London? What object worth visiting shall you find in Ireland? (172. *e.*) How will you go from Ireland to the North Cape? What food shall you find in Norway? (177.)

Observe the coast of Norway, lined with high rocks, and the

torrents rushing down from the mountains, full of the trunks of trees which are thus conveyed to the ocean.

Are the nights always dark there? (178.) How long is the longest day? (*See chart, and p. 34.*) What port in Russia will you find on the White Sea? How near are you to Lapland now, and in what direction must you go? How shall you be obliged to travel there? (184.) What towns shall you pass in Finland, as you go down to Cronstadt and St. Petersburg? (*St. Petersburg, see p. 83.*)

In what direction from St. Petersburg is Moscow? How will you go from Moscow to the capital of Poland? What do you find remarkable in Poland? (181.) To what seaport will you go, to sail for Stockholm? What can you say of the Swedes, and their mines? (182.) How can you go from Stockholm to Amsterdam? What places do you pass, and what peninsula? What do you find remarkable in Holland? (192.) How will you go to find the second city of Europe? (*Paris, p. 83.*)

What drink shall you find common here? (200.) How will you go to Berlin through the southern kingdoms of Germany? And now, how will you get to Vienna, and what countries, rivers, and mountains must you pass? What use is made of the mines in Austria? Describe Venice, (*see p. 84.*)

What lofty mountains shall you find in Switzerland, and how shall you be in danger there? (199.) In what direction is the country of the ancient Romans? (206.)

What objects of curiosity shall you find in Italy? (*See 50, a, b, c.*) What ancient country will be East of you when you reach Sicily? What shall you find interesting in Greece? (207.) What course will you take to Smyrna? What countries of Europe, which you have not visited, shall you pass in going home from Smyrna by sea? What port of Spain shall you pass, in going toward the straits of Gibraltar?

The plague often prevails in Turkey, and they will not allow you to land in Spain, until you have spent a month in quarantine on board the vessel.

Which way will you go, to find the capital of Spain? What course will you take to visit the capital of Portugal, and then meet your vessel at Gibraltar?

Gibraltar is much resorted to for trade, and you will find the

dress and languages of ten different nations in its streets. It is probably the strongest fortress in the world. It belongs to Great Britain.

Describe your course from Gibraltar to London.

210. CITIES OF EUROPE.

The cities of Europe far surpass those of America and Africa in number, population, and magnificence. They are superior to any in the world, in their universities, hospitals, museums, and other public institutions, in the splendour and size of their churches and public buildings, and in the extent of their manufactures and commerce.

In the cities on the continent of Europe, the streets are usually narrow, crooked, and filthy. They are seldom furnished with side walks, and foot passengers are exposed to constant danger in the crowd of carriages.

The houses are generally of stone or brick; but in many of the towns of Denmark, Norway, Sweden, and Russia, they are built of timber. They are usually high, often from five to ten stories in large cities. They are not uniform in their appearance, and magnificent palaces are frequently surrounded by wretched huts.

On the continent, a great number of the cities and towns are surrounded with walls, and entered only by gates.

In the cities of the Catholic countries, especially in the South of Europe, pictures or images of saints are placed at the corner of the streets, and passengers frequently stop to offer their devotions before them. These cities are also distinguished for the great number of their churches and chapels, and for the costly paintings, statues, and ornaments they contain. The cities of Southern Europe are usually furnished with water by aqueducts; and public fountains are erected in the streets and public squares, which add to their beauty, and produce a refreshing coolness in summer.

Most of the large cities are seaports, or connected with the sea. The capitals are usually distinguished as the residence of the sovereign and royal family. London, Paris, St. Petersburg, Moscow, Vienna, Berlin, Amsterdam, Dublin, Rome, Florence, and Dresden, are situate on rivers, which divide them into two

portions connected by bridges. Rome, Madrid, Lisbon, and Edinburgh, are built on several hills, which gives them a picturesque appearance. Naples, and most of the other cities lying on the Mediterranean, are situate on declivities; and the streets rise from the shore, like the seats of an amphitheatre.

London is the first city in the civilized world, in population, commerce, and wealth. It includes, 1, The City; 2, Westminster, the residence of the royal family and court; 3, Southwark, on the south side of the Thames; and, 4, several adjoining villages. The streets are generally well paved, and furnished with good side walks. It is distinguished for the number and extent of its literary and charitable institutions, but most of all for its trade, extending to every quarter of the globe, and for the wealth of its inhabitants.

Paris is the second city of Europe in population. It holds the first rank in the beauty of its public gardens, fountains, monuments, and palaces, and in the extent and value of its libraries and literary institutions. It is especially distinguished for the gaiety and dissipation of the people, and the number and variety of its public amusements.

Constantinople presents a magnificent appearance from the sea, in the assemblage of mosques, towers, and palaces, mingled with beautiful trees. But the streets are narrow, and the whole aspect within the city is gloomy and disagreeable.

Naples is situate in the midst of a fine amphitheatre of hills. On one side is Mount Vesuvius; and a bay spreads before it, ornamented with fertile islands, which is scarcely equalled in beauty by any in the world.

Moscow, the ancient capital of Russia, was burned in the war of 1812, but is now in a great measure rebuilt. It presents a singular mixture of Asiatic huts, and temples, and mosques, with European palaces and churches.

St. Petersburg is one of the most magnificent cities in Europe, and the seat of extensive commerce. It is built on a spot which was almost a marsh 100 years ago.

Madrid is situate on high ground, half a mile above the level of the sea, which renders it cool at all seasons. It is only important as the residence of the king and royal family.

Lisbon, at a distance, presents a magnificent appearance. It has a fine body of water before it, and beautiful cultivated hills in

the rear. But the streets are irregular and filthy, and the houses are neither elegant nor convenient.

Vienna, the former capital of Germany, is now the chief city of the Austrian empire. It is the resort of merchants from various nations of Europe and Asia, and is distinguished for the beauty of its environs, and the luxury and dissipation of the nobility.

Amsterdam is built on oaken piles, in a marshy spot; and, like most of the cities of Holland, is intersected by a great number of canals passing through its principal streets.

Dublin is the second city of the British Isles. It presents a grand appearance from the sea, and few cities have a greater proportion of magnificent and useful buildings.

Berlin, the residence of the king of Prussia, is a well-built city, situate on both sides of the River Spree, a small branch of the Elbe.

Rome was once the capital of the known world; but is now decaying in population and wealth. A large part of it is laid out in fields and gardens, or covered with the ruins of the ancient city. Its churches are very splendid. St. Peter's is the grandest in the world.

Venice is a beautiful city, remarkable for its situation on islands. The people pass from one part to another in boats, on the canals, and horses and carriages are rarely seen.

Hamburg is the first commercial city of Germany. Like the cities of Holland it is intersected by canals. Its streets are not pleasant or well-built.

Copenhagen, situate on the island of Zealand, is a commercial city of considerable wealth and beauty.

Edinburgh is not a place of commerce or of manufactures; but it is distinguished for its literary institutions and its learned men, and is the principal seat of the courts of law for Scotland.

Stockholm has a singular and romantic appearance, from its situation on a number of rocky islands.

Florence, the capital of Tuscany, is a beautiful city, situate on both sides of the river Arno. *Turin* is a handsome, fortified town, the residence of the king of Sardinia. *Dresden* is one of the most elegant cities of Europe, distinguished for its manufacture of fine porcelain or china ware. *Geneva*, the chief city of Switzerland, has a beautiful situation on the lake of the same name.

Genoa, a commercial city, was the birthplace of Columbus. *Warsaw*, the capital of Poland, is composed chiefly of mean, wooden hovels, with only a few fine buildings. *Bergen* has a fine harbour. *Christiania* is the principal place in Norway, and is admired for the beauty of its situation.

The chief cities of Europe rank in population as follows :

1 London	" Moscow	" Berlin	" Genoa
2 Paris	5 Lisbon	7 Venice	" Turin
3 Constanti- nople	" Vienna	" Rome	" Warsaw
	" Amsterdam	8 Copenhagen	" Stockholm
4 Naples	" Madrid	" Edinburgh	10 Dresden
" Petersburg	6 Dublin	9 Florence	" Geneva.

ASIA.

211. Asia is the largest of the four great divisions of the globe, and has the greatest number of inhabitants.

It was in Asia that our first parents were created, and the human race preserved after the deluge; there the most important events recorded in Scripture took place; and there the Saviour died to redeem mankind.

212. Asia and its islands extend from the Equator and the Torrid Zone on the South, beyond the Polar Circle on the North, each portion partaking of the peculiar character of its zone. (*See map of the world, and the account of zones—86, 87—96, 97—102, 103.*)

213. The northern and middle portions of Asia, like those of America, are generally colder than the countries of Europe in the same latitude.

214. The tea-plant and some of the finest perfumes and spices, including the nutmeg, cinnamon, and clove, are productions of Asia, which are not found, or very sparingly, in any other part of the world.

215. Asia abounds in the precious metals and gems, and was for a long time the only place where diamonds and pearls were obtained.

216. The people in the west of Asia have light com-

plexions, and belong to the European race; but those East of the Belur Tag and the Ganges are yellow or brown, and belong to the Tartar and Malay races.

Questions.—(I.) On what continent, and in what part of it, is Asia? (*See map of the world.*) How is Asia bounded on the N. E. S. and W.? What is the size of Asia compared with other portions of the globe? What is its population? (*See Chart.*) What are some of the most striking events which have occurred in Asia? What are some of the peculiar productions of Asia? What are its mineral productions? What is the complexion of the people in the western countries? What in the eastern and southern parts?

217.

a. The sciences are little understood in Asia; but in the half civilized countries there are schools and seminaries, to give the knowledge of writing and arithmetic, and of their laws and religion, to certain classes of the people.

b. The languages of Asia are far more numerous than those of Europe; and many books of religion, laws, history, and poetry, are found written in them.

c. The great mass of the Asiatics are in the most degraded state of ignorance, and are cruelly oppressed by despotic priests, nobles, and emperors.

d. They generally practise fraud, robbery, and the worst of crimes, without shame; and often make vice a part of religious worship.

Questions.—(II.) What is the state of the sciences, and of education in Asia? What can you say of the languages of Asia? What is the state of the common people generally? What is the moral state of the Asiatics generally?

Questions on the Chart of the world.

Civilization.—(I.) Are there any civilized countries in Asia? What countries are half-civilized, and in what part of Asia do they chiefly lie? What parts are barbarous? What are savage?

Government.—(II.) What countries of Asia are governed by chiefs? What kind of government is there in the other countries of Asia? What parts are subject to Russia? What to China?

Religion.—(II.) Is there any Christian country in Asia? What parts are Mahometan? What are Pagan? Are there any missionary stations in Asia, and in what countries chiefly?

Population.—(II.) What country of Asia has the largest number of inhabitants? Which is the next to China in population? What countries have 14 or 18 millions? What have 10 millions? Which is the largest country of Asia, and what is its population? (*The population of Tartary and Tibet is very uncertain.*) What tribes are there in Siberia and Tartary, and where?

Questions on the Map of Asia.

Seas, Gulfs, &c.—(I.) What seas are there on the West of Asia? Where is the Isthmus of Suez, which unites it to Africa? What straits lead to the Red Sea? What two seas are there E. of the Black Sea? What gulfs and bays in the South of Asia? What seas on the East? What gulf E. of Tartary?

Mountains.—(I.) What chain of mountains is in the middle of Asia? What name does it take at the N. E.? What chain South of the Altaian, running in the same direction? What chain unites them to the Altaian chain? What two chains in the West of Asia? What chain do you find in the South of Hindoostan? What chain in Arabia? Which is the longest chain in Asia?

Boundaries and Capitals.—(I.) What country occupies the northern part of Asia? How is it bounded, and what is the capital? Between what latitudes does most of it lie? What countries lie principally between 30° and 50° latitude, occupying the middle of Asia? Mention the boundaries and capital or chief city of Turkey—Georgia—Independent Tartary—Chinese Tartary—Tibet—Arabia—Persia—East Persia. What countries lie between Tibet and Hindoostan? What are the countries of Asia lying chiefly S. of 30° latitude? How far S. do they extend? What are the boundaries and capitals of Hindoostan? China? The Burman Empire? Tonkin? Siam? Malaya? What are the principal countries on the eastern coast of Asia? What on the western coast? What on the southern?

Lakes and Inland Seas.—(I.) What great inland seas are there in the West of Asia, not connected with the ocean? What lake or sea is there in East Persia? What lakes in Siberia, and where? What is their size (*See 63. e.*).

Rivers.—(I.) What are the three great rivers in the North of Asia, beginning at the East? Where is the Olensk? What two branches has the Oby? What branch has the Yenesei? Through what lake does one of its branches pass? What three great rivers are in the East of Asia? What river empties itself into the China

Sea? What one into the gulf of Siam? What into the Bay of Bengal on the East? What smaller ones on the West? What river is in the West of Hindoostan? What in East Persia? Where are the Tigris and Euphrates? What rivers empty themselves into the Caspian Sea? What into the Sea of Aral? What branch has the Sihon? What river on the borders of Asia empties itself into the Sea of Azof? How many of the great rivers of Asia rise from the mountainous regions of Tartary and Tibet?

(II.) Describe each of the rivers named. (*See page 21.*)

Islands.—(I.) What islands lie N. of Asia, and in what ocean? What four large islands are there on the E. coast of Tartary? What two islands near the coast of China? What small cluster more distant? What cluster of islands lies E. of Tonkin? What are the principal islands in it? What is the most eastern group of the E. India Isles? What are the chief islands in it? What two large islands lie between these and Malaya? What are the chief islands lying S. of Borneo and Celebez? What very large island lies S. E. from Asia? To what division of the Earth does it belong. (*See map of the World.*) What small islands lie in the Bay of Bengal? What large island is S. of Hindoostan? What small groups are West of this?

Latitudes.—(II.) What are the countries of Europe in the same latitude with Siberia and Kamschatka? What of America? What countries of America and Europe correspond to Tartary in latitude? What correspond to Turkey and the North of Persia, Tibet, and China? What countries of Asia are farther South than any in Europe? What other portions of the world are in the same latitude?

What places in Siberia are nearly in the latitude of St. Petersburg? What towns and mountains are nearly in latitude 51° N. or in that of London? What important places are from 39° to 41° , or nearly in the latitude of Madrid, Naples, and New York? What remarkable places do you find in latitude 30° to 33° , or that of New Orleans, in the U. States? Near what remarkable places does the Tropic of Cancer pass? What parts or islands of Asia does the Equator cross?

Longitudes.—(II.) What is the longitude of Turkey E. from London? (*See Chart of the World.*) Is the time earlier or later than ours, and how much? (*See page 36.*) What time is it in Hindoostan, when it is noon at London? What in the Birman empire and China? What in Japan and New Holland?

NORTHERN ASIA.

IBERIA.

*Travelling in Siberia.*

218. The northern regions of Asia are entirely occupied by the Russian dominions, or Siberia.

The people of Siberia are rude or barbarous ; usually living in huts, half under ground ; and subsisting chiefly by hunting and fishing. They travel chiefly in sledges, drawn by reindeer or dogs, and use snow shoes in walking, as represented in the engraving.

This is the country to which state criminals are often exiled from Russia. Some of the large towns resemble those of the European dominions in civilization and religion.

219. It is generally frozen and barren, resembling Lapland in climate. It is larger than the whole of Europe. Many parts of it are immense plains, covered with almost perpetual snow.

Russia obtains large supplies of precious stones, gold, silver, and other metals, and salt, from the mines of this country, and the finest furs from its wild animals.

Questions on the map.—(I.) What country occupies the northern part of Asia? How is Siberia bounded? What cape is on the North? What islands? What chains of mountains in and around it? What rivers in the northern part? What is the capital?

(II.) What places are on the river Ural? Where is Tobolsk? What other place on the Oby is there below this? Where is the Steppe of Issim? (*See 43 d.*) What lake is near it? Where are Kolhyvane and Tomsk? What place is near lake Baikal? What river passes through this lake? What town is on the River Lena? Where is Okotsk? What peninsula is on the East, and what towns are on it? What missionary stations are there in Siberia?

MIDDLE REGIONS OF ASIA.

*Circassia—Georgia—Tartary—Turkey—Persia—
Tibet—Japan.*

220. The middle regions of Asia may be considered as embracing that vast mountainous tract or lofty plain, between the Altaian chain on the North, and the Himalah Mountains and Chinese wall on the South, extending from the Black Sea to the Channel of Tartary.

221. They lie between 30° and 50° of N. latitude; but the climate and productions depend chiefly on their situation, and the height of the ground. (*See 112—113*).

222. The southern parts of Persia, East Persia, and Tibet, extend into southern Asia, and partake of its climate.

223. A part of Turkey is warmer than the South of Europe; but in general, the countries West of the Belur Tag, or Cloudy Mountains, are temperate. The cold is moderated by the seas they embrace, and the heat by the mountains which cross them.

224. The countries East of the Belur Tag lie chiefly on one lofty plain, and are subject to extreme cold, even as far South as Tibet and the northern parts of Cabul. The air of these regions is so dry, that meat may be preserved for a long time without salt.

Questions.—(1.) How are the middle countries of Asia bounded? In what latitudes do they lie, and how is their climate determined? What parts extend into Southern Asia? What is the climate W. of the Belur Tag, and why? Describe the countries E. of the Belur Tag. What is remarkable in the air?

CIRCASSIA AND GEORGIA.

225. Circassia and Georgia are small countries lying between the Caspian and Black Seas, and are now both included in the dominions of Russia in Asia.

Circassia is inhabited by numerous hordes of wandering Tartars. The people of Georgia, like those of Armenia, profess the Christian religion.

These countries are celebrated for beautiful females, who are often sold as slaves to the Turks and Persians.

Questions.—(1.) Where is Circassia? Where is Georgia? What is the chief city, situate on the River Kur?

TARTARY.



Tartar Tents and Cattle.

226. The Tartars live in tents of felt, which are carried on horses, and sometimes on wheels, from place to

place. They wander in vast hordes or tribes, to find pasturage for their horses, camels, and sheep, and feed chiefly on the flesh and milk of these animals.

Tartary occupies almost the whole of the middle of Asia, from the Caspian Sea to the Pacific Ocean. It is divided into Chinese Tartary, lying East of the Belur Tag, subject to China; and Independent Tartary, West of these mountains, many of the hordes of which pay tribute to the emperor of Russia.

INDEPENDENT TARTARY.

227. This country has a fine climate, and generally, a fertile soil, which is left uncultivated.

It was once the seat of a powerful empire, and abounds in the ruins of ancient cities.

The people are generally barbarous; but in some parts they retain a small portion of civilization and knowledge. They belong to the European race.

Samarcand, the former capital, is said to be very large still. It contains a celebrated Mahometan school, or university.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Independent Tartary bounded? What sea does it contain? What rivers has it? What is the capital? What other city?

CHINESE TARTARY.

228. This portion of Tartary occupies the greater part of the elevated plain, mentioned in the account of the middle regions of Asia.

In most parts it is very barren, and scarcely inhabited; but the eastern portion contains a number of cities little known. The people belong to the Asiatic race.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Chinese Tartary bounded? How is it separated from China? What great river is there on the East? What place on it? What other principal places are in the eastern part? What peninsula there, and what islands?

What deserts in the interior? What places in the western part of Chinese Tartary? (*Clim.* 224; *Desert*, 43. b.)

TURKEY IN ASIA.



Turkish school.

229. This country was the original seat of the empire of the Turks, which now extends to Europe, and has its capital there.

It is warmer than Turkey in Europe, but the general character of the country and people is the same.

Like most eastern nations the Turks always sit cross-legged upon the floor. They often teach their children on a house-top, and they punish by striking the feet, which is called the *bastinado*.

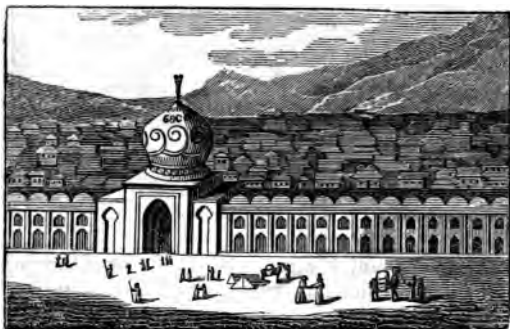
Armenia is inhabited by Christians, and many Greek Christians are scattered over other parts of Turkey.

The southern part is Palestine, or the Holy Land, formerly the residence of the Jews, with Jerusalem for its capital.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Turkey bounded? What is the capital? What chain of mountains is in Asia Minor?

(II.)—What are the three principal divisions? Where is Armenia? What rivers run from Turkey into the Persian Gulf? What port is on the Archipelago? What port on the Black Sea? What places are near the Black Sea? What cities on the Tigris, beginning at its source? Where is Jerusalem? What three seaports are in Syria? Where are Aleppo and Damascus? What island is on the coast of Syria?

PERSIA.



Ispahan.

230. A large part of Persia is covered with barren mountains and desert plains, and can only be traversed on camels or mules.

The air is cold and moist at the North, pure and serene in the middle, but extremely hot in the South.

Ispahan, the former capital, was one of the most splendid cities of Asia, but a large part of it is now in ruins.

The people are active, gay, polished, and hospitable; but dishonest, treacherous, and vicious.

Questions on the map.—How is Persia bounded ? What is the capital ? Where is Ispahan the former capital ?

(II.)—Where is Erivan ? What other cities are in the North ? What seaport is on the Gulf of Persia ? Where is Shiraz ? Are there any considerable rivers ?

EAST PERSIA.

CABULISTAN, AND BELOOCHISTAN.

231. The eastern part of Persia, which was separated from the rest some years ago, contains a number of distinct governments, most of which are tributary to the king of Cabul. It is therefore often called Cabulistan ; and sometimes Afghanistan, from the Afghans, a part of its inhabitants.

Beloochistan, which occupies the southern portion, is said to be an independent State, but its condition is not well ascertained.

This country is mountainous, and therefore cooler than those around it, but abounds in dry and desert plains, which cause distressing heat in summer.

The people, especially the Afghans, are more active and warlike than their neighbours.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is East Persia bounded ? What are the two principal divisions ? What is the capital ? What mountains are on the North ?

(II.) What separates it from Hindoostan ? What city has it East of the Indus ? What city in the West, and of what size ? What river and what city are in the South ? What places near the mouth of the Indus ?

TIBET.



Worship of the Grand Lama.

232. In Tibet the Grand Lama is the head of their religion and government. The people worship him as a divine being. When he dies, they believe his soul passes into the body of some child, who is sought and placed on the throne.

Tibet is a very dry, cold, unfruitful country, in the midst of mountains, subject to the emperor of China.

The people are mild, but indolent, timid, and superstitious. They have much more knowledge and skill in the arts than the Tartars.

Questions on the map—(1.) How is Tibet bounded? What is the capital? What large rivers rise in the mountains of Tibet? What is the height of the highest mountain? (See *Table of Mountains*.)

NAPAU AND BOOTAN.

233. These two kingdoms lie between Tibet and Hindoostan, and are tributary to Tibet.

They properly belong to Southern Asia, and have

a warm, but fine climate, like the North of Italy. On ascending the mountains near them, the inhabitants find perpetual spring on their sides, and unchanging winter on the tops.

Questions.—(1.) What is the situation of Napaul and Bootan? What can you say of the climate and mountains? Why are they not very hot like Hindoostan? (See 112.)

JAPAN.

234. The empire of Japan includes three islands of small extent, but extremely populous.

It is a rugged country, and is subject to extremes of heat and cold; but it is highly cultivated, and is said to be very rich in gold and silver.

The people are very ingenious; and are considered superior in arts, sciences, and good laws, to most if not all other nations of Asia.

Questions on the map.—(1.) Where are the islands of Japan, and how many are there? Which is the largest? What is the capital? What is the second city? Where is the chief place of trade, Nangasaki?

SOUTHERN ASIA.

*Arabia—Hindoostan—Burmah—Anam—Siam—
Malaya—China.*

235. The southern countries of Asia lie generally on the Indian Ocean, between 10° and 30° N. latitude.

China extends North to 40° of latitude, and Malaya, South nearly to the Equator.

236. All these countries, except the northern parts of China, have the climate and productions of the Torrid Zone, and the choicest plants of Asia.

They abound in rice, which is the principal food of the inhabitants, and in cotton and silk, from which most of their clothing is made.

237. Except Arabia, they are highly cultivated ; but so crowded with inhabitants, that the common people are miserably poor, and are often led by want to destroy or expose their children.

Many of these nations are, from necessity, more active and industrious than others found in the Torrid Zone.

238. The chief exports of Southern Asia and its islands are coffee, tea, gums, opium, spices, precious stones, and metals, with numerous manufactures of silk and cotton.

Questions.—(1.) Where do the southern countries of Asia lie ? What countries are included in this division of Asia ? How far do China and Malaya extend ? What can you say of the climate and productions ? What articles for food and clothing are found here ? What is the state of population, and of the common people ? What effect does necessity produce on the character of the people ? What are the chief exports ?

ARABIA.



Robbers in Arabia.

239. The interior of Arabia is inhabited by wandering Arabs, who live in tents, and subsist by pasturage and robbery.

The inhabitants of the coast live in towns and cities, and are much more advanced in civilization. (*See chart of the world.*)

The climate of Arabia is very hot and dry, and the interior is a sandy desert, where water is seldom found. This was the 'wilderness,' which the Israelites crossed in going from Egypt to Canaan.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Arabia bounded? What do you find in the interior? What mountains are the principal? What remarkable mountain is near the Red Sea? Are there any considerable rivers? What is the capital?

(II.)—What is the port of Mecca on the Red Sea? Which way from Mecca is Medina? What is the principal place in the East? Where is Mocha? What place is near it? What place in the S. E., and how situate? What Arabian island is near Cape Guardafui?

INDIA.

240. This name comprehends the two peninsulas of Southern Asia which are East of Arabia, divided into India within the Ganges, and India without, or East of the Ganges, called also Farther India.

The name India, or East Indies, is often used to include China and the Asiatic Islands also.

These peninsulas are remarkable for the number and size of their rivers, which, united with the heat of the climate, make them the most fertile countries on Earth.

HINDOOSTAN,

Or India within the Ganges.*A Widow on the funeral pile of her Husband.*

241. It is one of the religious customs of the Hindoos, that widows should be burned alive, with the dead bodies of their husbands; and hundreds are thus destroyed every year.

Hindoostan is divided into a great number of small kingdoms; but the British govern almost all that portion which lies on the Bay of Bengal and the Ganges, and a part of the western coast near Bombay.

It is a very hot, but moist country, producing the finest fruits and plants in abundance. (*See 236, 237.*)

The people are effeminate, indolent, and extremely vicious.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Hindoostan bounded? What mountains are there on the North? What is the chief river? What three rivers are in the southern part? What is the capital? Where is Delhi, the former capital?

(II.)—Where is Agra? Mention the chief cities on the Ganges

in their order. What are the eastern and western coasts called? What places are on the eastern coast? What on the western coast? How is Bombay situate? What cities are in the interior of the southern part of Hindoostan? What in the western part? Where is Golconda, celebrated for its diamonds? What is the southern cape of Hindoostan? What small islands are near it? What large island? What missionary stations are there in Hindoostan?

CEYLON.

242. Ceylon is a large fertile island, which produces almost all the cinnamon brought from India.

It abounds in precious stones, and has a pearl fishery on its coast.

This island is possessed by the British. It contains a large number of native Catholics.

Questions on the map.—(1.) Where does Ceylon lie? What is the chief town? Where is Trincomalee?

FARTHER INDIA.

243. This part of India lies South of Tibet, between the Ganges and the Chinese Sea, including the empires of Burmah and Anam, with Siam, and Malaya.

BURMAH, OR BURMAN EMPIRE.



Elephants carrying burdens.

244. The Burman empire produces very fine elephants, which are trained for riding and carrying burdens, and even assist in unlading ships.

This empire includes Ava, Pegu, and several small kingdoms, subdued by the more active and warlike Burmans.

The climate is cooler than that of Hindoostan, from the greater height of the land, but is still very hot.

The people are lively and intelligent, and acquainted with many of the arts ; but they are extremely cruel in their punishments, and barbarous in many of their customs.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is the Burman Empire bounded ? What is the chief river ? What is the capital ?

(II.)—What seaport is in the South ? What places are on the River Irawaddy ? Where is Arracan ? (*Clim. & Prod.* 236, 237.)

SIAM.

245. Siam is a small but rich and flourishing kingdom, with a climate and people like those of Burmah.

In Siam, as in many of the neighbouring countries, the inhabitants are obliged to build their houses on posts, to avoid the annual floods of their rivers, which cover the country with water, but render the soil very fertile.

Questions on the map.—(I.) Where does Siam lie ? Is it a large kingdom ? What is the capital ? (*Prod.* 236—7.)

EMPIRE OF ANAM, OR TONKIN.

*Idol worship in Tonkin.*

246. The Empire of Anam is said to extend over all the countries east of Burmah and Siam, including Cochin-China, Cambodia, and Laos; but very little is known with certainty concerning these countries.

The Tonkinese worship idols under the banyan tree, as represented in the engraving.

Although they are very superstitious, they are generally intelligent, active, and industrious.

The empire is said to be one of the most powerful in Asia, and has a considerable naval force.

Questions on the map.—(I.) In what direction from Burmah is Anam? What countries does it embrace? How is it bounded? What river passes through it? What is the capital? What other principal place is there? What place is in Cambodia? What gulf is on the East, and what island? (*Clim. and Prod.* 236, 237.)

MALAYA.

247. Malaya, or Malacca, is a hot, but productive peninsula, containing many independent states.

The people of this peninsula are bold and enterprising, but remarkable for treachery and cruelty. Those of the interior are savages of the African race.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Malaya bounded? What is the chief town? (*Clim. and Prod.* 236, 237.)

CHINA.



River and Village in China.

248. China is an extensive country, but extremely populous.

It is remarkable for the tea plant, and for its beautiful porcelain ware, called china.

The soil is every where cultivated with the greatest care, but great numbers are obliged to live on the water in boats, and the poor suffer for want of food.

The people are ingenious and industrious, but timid, dishonest, and treacherous in their intercourse with strangers.

The Chinese formerly tried to defend themselves against the Tartars by a wall with gates and numerous towers, most of which still remains. It is sufficiently broad for several persons to ride abreast, extending 1500 miles, over rivers and lofty mountains.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is China bounded? Where is the Chinese wall? In what latitude does China lie? What must we suppose as to the climate of the various parts? What are the two chief rivers? What is the capital?

(II.) What are the principal ports and cities? Where is the most remarkable canal of China? What large island lies near the coast? What small cluster beyond it? What countries of Asia are subject to China?

EAST INDIA OR ASIATIC ISLANDS.



Children preparing to devour their Parents.

249. The E. India Islands may be considered as extending to 10° S. latitude, and 130° W. longitude.

250. They produce the finest fruits, gums, spices, and minerals. They also abound with wild animals, among which are the orang outang, crocodile, tiger, and rhinoceros.

The natives of these islands are chiefly Pagans; and some of them devour their parents when they become old. The parents descend from a tree, and suffer themselves to be killed, saying: "The fruit is ripe and it must be eaten."

251. These islands are divided into three principal

groups ; the Sunda Isles, the Molucca or Spice Isles, and the Philippine Isles.

THE SUNDA ISLES.

252. The Sunda Isles include Sumatra, Java, and other islands south of Borneo and Celebez.

They furnish gold, diamonds, and gums ; but pepper is the most important production.

They are inhabited by a mixture of Chinese, Malays, and natives, and have much commerce. The interior is little known.

Sumatra has a ridge of mountains running through it, the highest being loftier than the Alps ; which render the climate generally agreeable, and in some parts cold.

Java is a beautiful and fertile island, but very unhealthy. It is now subject to the king of the Netherlands.

Questions on the map.—(1.) Which way from Malacca is Sumatra ? What straits separate it ? In what zone is it ? Where is the British settlement of Bencoolen ? What other place do you find ? Which way from Sumatra is Java ? What straits are between them ? What is the capital ? What are the other principal islands among the Sunda Isles ?

BORNEO AND CELEBEZ.

253. Borneo is a very large island, entirely possessed by the natives.

It is rich in gold, diamonds, pearls, and valuable plants, and is remarkable as the residence of the orang-outang, an animal very much like man.

254. Celebez is a fruitful island, little known, with a settlement belonging to the Dutch at Macassar. The natives are said to be ingenious and brave, but ferocious and cruel.

Questions on the map.—(1.) Where is Borneo ? What is the

capital? Between what islands does Celebez lie? Where is Macassar?

THE MOLUCCAS, OR SPICE ISLANDS.

255. The Moluccas, or Spice Islands, are remarkable for producing spices, and especially the nutmeg and clove. They now belong to the Netherlands.

Questions on the map.—(1.) What islands are included in the Moluccas? Which is the largest? Mention the relative situation of the others.

PHILIPPINE ISLES.

256. The Philippine Isles are possessed by the Spaniards, who have derived great revenues from them.

They produce gold and other metals, with cotton, rice, and sugar in great abundance.

Questions on the map.—Which is the largest of the Philippine Isles? What others are the principal? What is the chief city, and its size?

AUSTRALIA.



Houses of Australia.

257. Most of the people of Australia live in rude

huts of bark, often built on floats, and some even sleep on trees.

258. These nations are in a ruder state of society than any others yet known, without any religion or knowledge of a future state, so far as can be discovered.

Many tribes among them are without huts, clothes, boats, or implements for hunting and fishing; and feed on fruits, shell-fish, or even on caterpillars and worms.

The people of New Holland, and New Guinea, and the islands near the latter, are of the African race. Those of the New Hebrides, New Zealand, and the more southern isles, resemble the Asiatics.

259. Very little is yet known of this portion of the world, except the coasts. English colonies are now settled in New Holland and Van Diemen's Land, and many persons emigrate thither every year. The climate and soil are very favourable to agriculture.

Questions.—(1.) What can you say of the houses of the Australians? What is their state of civilization generally? What can you say of some tribes? Of what races are the inhabitants? What is known of these countries?

Questions on the map.—(1.) Between what oceans does Australia lie? What are the two largest islands? What are some of the smaller ones E. of New Guinea? What West of this island? What straits are between New Holland and New Guinea? What islands are E. of New Holland? What one is S. of it, and what straits separate this from New Holland? What considerable island is S. E. of New Holland? What are some of the capes of New Holland?

NEW HOLLAND.

260. New Holland is an extensive island, only one quarter less than Europe.

The people of New Holland generally resemble the Africans except in the straightness of their

hair; but some are found among them of the Malay race.

The British have established a settlement at Port Jackson, to which they send criminals from England.

VAN DIEMEN'S LAND, the island south of New Holland, is also settled by the British.

Questions on the map (1.)—What is the comparative size of New Holland? What Gulf is on the N. of New Holland? What names are given to the northern, eastern, and western coasts? Where is Port Jackson? Where is Sidney Cove? What missionary station is near it? What other in Australia? Where does Van Diemen's Land lie? What settlement is there on it?

NEW ZEALAND.

261. New Zealand consists of two large, fertile islands, which enjoy a mild climate like that of France.

The people are tall and well formed, and more civilized than in any other portion of Australia. They are brave and generous in many respects; but they eat the bodies of their enemies killed in war.

One of the kings has received Christian missionaries, who are endeavouring to introduce civilization and Christianity among the people.

Questions on the map (1.)—How many islands are there belonging to New Zealand? What straits divide them? (*See map of the world.*) In what direction are they from New Holland?

NEW GUINEA AND OTHER ISLANDS.

262. **NEW GUINEA**, **NEW BRITAIN**, and the neighbouring islands, lying in the north-eastern part of Australia, have been little examined.

They are rich in vegetable productions, and are distinguished as the chief residence of the bird of Paradise.

263. **NEW CALEDONIA** and the **NEW HEBRIDES** are said to be barren and rocky islands. The people build neat huts, and subsist on roots and fish.

Questions (1.)—What islands lie North of New Holland? What are East of New Holland? What can you say of them?

POLYNESIA.



Human Sacrifice in Polynesia.

264. Polynesia includes the islands in the Pacific Ocean, which lie east of the Philippine Islands and Australia. (*See map of the world.*) In almost all these islands, they have been accustomed to sacrifice human victims to their gods.

265. The climate of these islands is generally delightful, and they abound in fine fruits, especially the bread-fruit, which is used instead of bread.

266. The people are remarkably mild, polite, and ingenious, for barbarians; but dishonest, vicious, and cruel in many of their customs.

267. Most of the nations of Polynesia are Pagans; but those of the Society and Sandwich Islands have de-

stroyed their idols and temples, and received Christian missionaries.

Questions.—What is Polynesia? What custom has been generally prevalent? In what zone do most of these islands lie? What is their climate? What are some of their productions? What is the character of the people? What is their religion?

ISLANDS NORTH OF THE EQUATOR.

268. The inhabitants of the PELEW ISLANDS are very hospitable to strangers, and remarkable for honesty and chastity.

269. The CAROLINES are resorted to by ships after voyages in the Pacific Ocean, on account of their fine air and climate.

270. The SANDWICH ISLANDS are supposed to contain 400,000 inhabitants; Owhyhee is 180 miles long and 72 broad. Christian missionaries from the North American States are now instructing the people of these islands.

Questions on the map (1.)—What groups of islands are North of the Equator? In what direction from the Philippine Isles are the Ladrone and Caroline Isles? In what longitude are the Sandwich Islands? Which is the largest of the Sandwich Islands? What others are the principal, and in what direction from Owhyhee? What are some of the small islands lying between the Sandwich and Caroline Isles?

ISLANDS SOUTH OF THE EQUATOR.

271. The people of the FRIENDLY ISLANDS are remarkable for industry, neatness, and skill in agriculture and some kinds of manufactures.

272. The people of the NAVIGATORS' ISLES are uncommonly stout and tall, and more ferocious than their neighbours.

273. The people of the SOCIETY ISLANDS are the

first example of a nation converted to Christianity by the efforts of missionaries in modern times.

274. The people of the MARQUESAS are said to be almost as fair as Europeans, with regular forms and features.

Questions on the map. (1.)—What are the principal groups of islands South of the Equator? In what longitude are the Friendly and Navigators' Isles? What is the principal island among the Friendly Islands? What among the Navigators' Isles? In what direction are the Society Isles from the Friendly Isles? What are the chief of these islands? Where are the Marquesas? In what longitude are these islands? What single islands lie N. and E. of these groups?

275. TRAVELS ON THE MAP, *In Asia, Australia, and Polynesia.*

If you wish to travel in Asia it will be best to embark for Smyrna, where many English vessels go to obtain opium, figs and other fruits, and silks.

Describe your course from London to Smyrna. (*See map of the world.*) What kind of people do you expect to see there? (207, 229.) Which way will you go to visit Ephesus? (*See map of Europe.*)

Travellers in Asiatic Turkey usually suffer their beards to grow, and dress in robes, and turbans, and slippers; because the Turks often insult, and even kill, those they know to be Christians, and think it is no crime.

Through what seas and straits must you pass to visit Constantinople? (*See map of Europe.*) How must you sit and eat here? What is the nearest Russian port to Constantinople? What sea must you cross to visit Circassia? Where is Astrachan?

In the eastern part of Siberia you would be amused at being drawn by dogs; but you will spend your time more profitably in other parts of the world, than in taking the long, cold, and difficult journey through it.

What have other travellers found in Siberia, and how is it used as a place of punishment? (218.) Through what port on the Caspian can you pass, to see Teflis, the capital of Georgia? In

what direction will you go to visit Jerusalem? What places shall you pass, and what can you say of them?

Do not fail to visit Mount Ararat, in Armenia, on which the Ark rested after the deluge.

What can you say of Jerusalem and Syria? Who formerly lived here? and what great events have taken place? (229.)

In what direction is Egypt from Jerusalem? Where will you find the splendid ruins of Palmyra? (*See map of Africa.*)

If you wish to see the Arabian desert, and visit Mount Sinai, you must carry water with you in bags of skins; and procure camels, which can drink, at once, enough for several days.

What is the direction of Mecca from Mount Sinai? In what direction is Mocha, which produces the finest coffee?

Which are most civilized, the Arabs on the coast or in the interior? (239.) What port will you find at the head of the Red Sea? (*See map of Africa.*) What course will you take by sea, to go to Bushire in Persia?

Observe in the Persian Gulf the poor divers, who are slaves, obliged to hazard their lives in procuring the pearl-oysters.

In what direction will you go to the ancient capital of Persia? Where is the modern capital, and what can you say of these cities? How is Persia divided? (231.) How will you go to the eastern portion of it? Are the people of this country like those of West Persia?

What interesting objects shall you see in Independent Tartary? (227.) How do you like their mode of living here and their food? (226.) What mountains must you cross to go into Chinese Tartary? What country will then be near you?

You may now go to see the Grand Lama. (*See 232.*) Remember, when you go to visit a great man in Asia, always to carry a present with you of some value.

What desert must you cross to reach Eastern Tartary? Shall you find any cities there?

What small but wealthy kingdom is now East of you? What wall must you cross to go into China? If you are permitted to travel in China, (which will not be unless you are in company with an ambassador) which way will you go to the capital? What is your course thence to Nankin, and to Canton? What is the general state of the people? (248.)

You may now lay aside all your thick clothing, for it will be of no use to you in these countries.

How will you go to visit all the capitals of India without the Ganges? What mode of conveyance shall you find? (244.) What kind of houses? (245.) Will you venture to Malacca? (See 247.) In what direction will you go to Calcutta?

Do the Hindoos need any instruction and reformation? (241.) To what neighbouring country can you go to avoid the heat? (233.) What island lies South of Hindoostan, and what spice can you obtain there? (242.)

In the other islands of Asia you will only be able to visit the European settlements. Beware, as you go, of the treacherous Malays; who often visit vessels in a friendly manner, and then slaughter every man on board.

What course will you take to visit the chief European settlements in the islands of Asia, beginning at Sumatra? Describe the islands you will see on your voyage, so far as known, ending your course at the Spice Islands. How do you like the appearance and customs of the people in Australia? What Europeans shall you find in New Holland? What missionary stations shall you find in this portion of the world?

What Christian nation shall you find in Polynesia? (273.) Describe the islands you pass in going to them. (271, 272.)

When you reach Otaheite, you will find many Christian churches, and the people beginning to be industrious, and anxious to be acquainted with books.

What islands are North East of these? What can you say of them? (274.) In what direction will you go to find the Sandwich Islands? What course will you take to go home round Cape Horn, and what countries shall you pass?

276. CITIES OF ASIA.

Asia abounds with large cities, but much inferior in their appearance to those of Europe. The buildings are generally mean, and crowded with inhabitants. The streets are extremely narrow, irregular, and filthy, and not usually paved.

In Western Asia the houses of the rich are usually of stone, or of brick, which are sometimes only sun-dried. They are generally built around a court or space in the centre, from which they re-

ceive most of their light and air, and which is frequently adorned with gardens and fountains. The houses are often magnificent within ; but they have few or no windows toward the street. They present to the traveller only a dismal succession of high walls, with here and there a lattice, and seem like a range of prisons. The roofs are usually flat, so that the inhabitants can pass from one house to another without descending into the street. They frequently sleep on the house-top, in the hot season. The houses of the poor are usually low and mean, built of mud, or a mixture of small stones and mortar.

Instead of churches, the Mahometan cities are adorned with mosques, which are often very splendid. At the side of each mosque are minarets, or lofty circular towers, with a gallery near the top, from which a crier calls to the people at the hours of prayer.

The cities of Turkey, as well as those of Africa on the Mediterranean, are frequently visited by the plague, which destroys vast numbers of the inhabitants.

The cities of Eastern Asia (except a few in Hindoostan) are poorly built, and are much inferior to those of Western Asia. They are generally low, thatched huts, formed of mud or of bamboo. Even the palace of the emperor of China is only a collection of mean cottages, richly gilded, and hung with splendid curtains and other ornaments. These cities are built of such slight materials, that they are frequently destroyed by fire, but are easily rebuilt. The temples and pagodas are generally the only buildings which have any beauty ; and these are often splendidly adorned with gold and gilding, especially in China and Burmah.

Most of the cities of Asia are surrounded with walls, usually of mud or sun-dried bricks. Many of them are partially in ruins, or surrounded with the ruins of ancient cities.

Astrachan is a place of great trade, situate on an island in the Volga. Its population is a mixed assemblage of various nations. *Irkutsk*, the principal town of Eastern Siberia, is a place of considerable trade and population, resembling European cities in its churches and public buildings. *Tobolsk* and *Tomsk* are important, on account of the trade carried on through them between Russia and China. *Teflis* is noted for its warm baths.

Samarcand was formerly the most renowned city of the East.

Bucharia is a place of considerable trade and importance. Both are noted for their Mahometan colleges.

Aleppo is the principal city of Asiatic Turkey. *Damascus* is beautifully situate on the river Barraddy. Both these cities are adorned with many fine buildings, and are important for their manufactures and commerce. *Smyrna* is the chief seat of foreign trade in Turkey. *Bagdad* is also an important seat of commerce, but meanly built. *Jerusalem* is built on the ruins of the ancient city. It is much resorted to by Christian pilgrims, and still preserves a degree of magnificence.

Teheran is chiefly important as the residence of the king and court of Persia. *Ispahan*, the former capital, is still the first commercial city of Persia. It was formerly a city of immense size, and the principal mosques and palaces are still very grand. Its ruins are several miles in extent. *Shiras* is celebrated for its fine climate, and for the beauty of its environs, as well as for its colleges. *Bushire* is the chief seaport of Persia.

Mecca is celebrated as the birthplace of Mahomet. It is well built, and derives great wealth from the immense concourse of Mahometan pilgrims.

Medina is a meanly built town, only remarkable for the tomb of Mahomet. The mosque which contains it is magnificent, supported by 400 columns of black marble, with 300 lamps, continually burning. *Sana* is considered the largest and most populous city of Arabia. *Mocha* is the chief seaport of Arabia, and the seat of its trade with Europe.

Cabul is an ancient city. It has an extensive trade with Tartary, Persia, and India. *Peshawer* is one of the residences of the king of Cabul, and the resort of people from all parts of India and Western Asia.

Calcutta is the metropolis of British India. Its commerce is very extensive, and it is inhabited by merchants from every part of the globe. The houses of the English resemble European palaces. The natives inhabit a distinct portion of the town, built in the Asiatic manner.

Madras is the capital of the British possessions in the South of India; and *Bombay*, of those on the East. *Bombay* is situate on a small barren island near the coast, and has extensive commerce. *Columbo* is the British capital of Ceylon. It resembles the cities of Europe in its appearance.

Goa is a populous city and territory, possessed by the Portuguese. **Pondicherry**, on the coast of Coromandel, belongs to the French.

Benares is the most populous city of India, and celebrated as a holy city, and a seat of learning. Many of its houses are large and well-built, and it is crowded with persons from all parts of India, who come here to end their days. **Delhi**, the former capital of Hindoostan, is now much reduced. **Poonah** is the modern capital of the empire of the Mahrattas.

Ummerapoora is the residence of the emperor of Burmah. **Siam** is an extensive city, intersected by canals. **Kesho**, the capital of Tonkin, has some wide streets and good buildings. **Faifo** is a seaport of Cochin China, sometimes visited by Europeans. **Malacca** contains many good houses of stone, and is distinguished for a college founded by an English Missionary Society.

China abounds in large cities; but we know only the names of most of them. **Pekin** is probably the most extensive and populous city in the world. It is the residence of the emperor of China.

Nankin, the former residence of the emperor, is distinguished for its porcelain tower, and for the cotton cloth called nankeen. **Canton** is the principal port in China, and the only one at which Europeans and Americans are allowed to trade. All the cities known in China are very uniform in their appearance and mode of building, and remarkable for their crowded population, and for the exercise of various trades in their streets. **Chenyang**, the capital of the Mandshur Tartars, is said to be an extensive city. **Cashgar** is the residence of the Chinese governor of Tartary. **Lassa** is the residence of the Grand Lama of Thibet, and is crowded with worshippers from all parts of Asia.

Jeddo is one of the most populous cities on the globe. It is the residence of the emperor of Japan, whose palace is a city of itself. **Meaco** is the centre of religion and learning in the empire. **Nangasaki** is the only place in Japan at which Europeans are allowed to trade.

Manilla, **Macassar**, and **Amboyna** are the chief places of European trade, in the islands to which they belong. **Acheen**, the capital of the most celebrated native kingdom of Sumatra, is formed of houses built on posts. **Batavia** was formerly a place of very extensive trade. Its climate is almost fatal to strangers,

and its population is now much diminished. *Borneo*, the capital of the island of Borneo, consists of about 3,000 floating houses. *Sydney*, the chief settlement of New Holland, is a large town, with one of the finest harbours in the world.

AFRICA.

277. Africa is the third quarter of the globe in point of size. The population is variously estimated from 30 to 150 millions; but nothing is known with certainty concerning any parts except the coasts.

278. In the interior of Africa, the heat of the climate is not moderated by mountains, lakes, or rivers, and extensive tracts are occupied by deserts of sand.

279. The climate, productions, and character of the people, are such as are generally found in the Torrid Zone; those parts which are well watered being very fruitful.

280.

The northern countries of Africa were anciently among the most enlightened in the world, and still have written languages.

These are now among the lowest of half-civilized nations. The rest of Africa has always been in a savage or barbarous state.

Most of the Africans, like other barbarous nations, make slaves of those whom they take in war, and many have been sold to Europeans and Americans. In the northern parts of Africa there is also a considerable trade in white slaves, usually Georgians, Circassians, or Turks.

The Mahometan religion extends over all the North of Africa.

The Abyssinians, and some of the people of Egypt, profess a corrupt Christianity, but not deserving the name.

All the other nations of Africa are sunk in superstition and vice; and some nations have been found who do not believe in any God.

Questions. (I.)—On which continent, and what part of it, does Africa lie? (*See map of the world.*) How is it bounded on the N., E., S., and W.? What isthmus unites it to Asia? What does Africa resemble in shape? What is its comparative size?

What is the supposed population? In what zones does it lie? What can you say of the climate generally? What is the state of a large part of it? What can you say of the productions and people?

(II.) What was the ancient state of Northern Africa? What is it now, and what is that of other parts? What barbarous practice have they? What nations profess to be Christians? What is the moral state of the rest?

Questions on the chart of the World.

Civilization. (I.)—Are there any civilized countries in Africa? What countries are half-civilized? What are barbarous? What is the state of the rest?

Government. (II.)—What is the government of Morocco? What of the other northern countries? What is that of Soudan? What of the other countries in the middle of Africa? What of the southern countries? What Christian colony is on the South, and to whom does it belong?

Religion. (I.)—What is the religion of the northern countries of Africa, and of Nubia? What country in the middle has a corrupt Christianity? What is the religion of Soudan and Senegambia? What is that of Guinea? What of the southern countries? What of the eastern coast?

Population. (II.)—What country is that the population of which is the largest known in Africa?

The population of most of these countries is unknown, as well as that of many of their cities.

What countries have four millions of inhabitants? What one has two millions and a half of inhabitants? What is probably the population of Tripoli? Who are the inhabitants of Barbary? What people do you find in Soudan? What in Guinea, Lower Guinea, and Zanguebar? What in South Africa? Who inhabit the Colony of the Cape?

Questions on the map of Africa.

Capes. (I.)—What is the most northern cape of Africa? What is the southern cape? What are the eastern and western capes? What capes are on the western coast above Cape Palmas? What capes on the coast of Guinea? What capes between this and the Cape of Good Hope? What capes on the eastern coast?

Seas, Gulfs, &c. (I.)—What sea lies on the East? What on

the North? What straits enter the Red Sea? What channel is on the East? What bays are on the W. coast of Africa? What on the eastern? What gulf is near the Equator? What one on the North, and where?

Mountains and Deserts. (I.)—Where are the Mountains of the Moon? What mountains are in the western part of Africa? What in the northern? What two chains of mountains are between the Equator and the Tropic of Capricorn? What chain is in South Africa? What are the principal deserts known, and where are they?

Boundaries and Capitals. (I.)—What countries lie North of the Tropic of Cancer? What are the boundaries and capitals of each, beginning with the states of Barbary on the West? What are the three great divisions of the country between the Tropic and the Mountains of the Moon? What are the boundaries and capitals of each portion? What are some of the smaller divisions of Soudan? What are the great divisions of Africa between the Mountains of the Moon, or Jibbel Kumra, and the southern tropic.

So little is known of Africa, that it is impossible to obtain any accurate accounts of boundaries in most parts of it. Those which are chiefly formed by geographers are marked by small dots; and those more certain, by larger dots, with intervening lines, as in Barbary.

What are the countries and chief cities in Lower Guinea? What are some of the countries and chief cities on the coast of Zanguebar? What countries are North of the Equator on this coast? What name is given to the unknown interior of this part of Africa? What are the boundaries and capital of the Colony of the Cape?

Lakes and Rivers. (I.)—Where is Lake Maravi? Lake Dembeah? Lake Dibbie? Lake Tsad? Which are the two largest rivers of Africa? What three branches form the Nile? Where do they rise? Where does the Niger rise? Through what country does it pass, as it flows East?

The Niger is believed by some to empty itself into the Nile; by others on the coast of Guinea; and by others into an inland sea or lake; but nothing is known certainly on this subject.

Where is the Senegal? Which way from it is the Gambia? What two rivers are South of the Kong Mountains? Where is the

River Zaire ? Where is the Bembaroque ? What principal rivers are in South Africa ? In what mountains do they rise ? Which is the largest ? What is the chief river known on the East ? What one in the South part of Abyssinia ?

II. Describe each of the rivers mentioned, the source, course, and place of emptying itself.

Islands (I.)—What three groups of islands do you find North of Cape Blanco ? What cluster off Cape Verd ? What small islands on the coast, above Cape Verd ? What below ? What two islands South from Cape Palmas ? What in the Gulf of Guinea ? What large one on the eastern coast ? What two small ones East of this ? What North of it ? What in the Channel of Mozambique ? What Arabian island is off Cape Guardafui ?

Latitudes. (II.)—In what latitude do the northern portions of Africa lie ? What is that of the Mountains of the Moon ? Where does the Equator pass ? In what zone does the middle portion or larger part of Africa lie ? What is the latitude of South Africa ? With what countries of Europe does it compare in latitude ? What parts of America are in the latitude of Barbary ? Of Senegambia ? Of Guinea ? What parts of Africa are in the latitude of the West Indies ? Of New Grenada ? Peru ? Chili ? Lima ? Rio Janeiro ? Atacama ? Valparaiso ?

Longitudes. (II.)—What is the longitude of St. Helena from London ? What is the difference of time ? What is that of Egypt ? (*See chart of the world.*) What is the difference of time between London and the Cape of Good Hope ? Between London and Madagascar ?

NORTHERN AFRICA.

281. Northern Africa may be considered as embracing the regions North of the Tropic of Cancer.

The natural heat of a tropical climate is here made more oppressive by the neighbouring deserts.

The principal countries of Northern Africa are the Barbary States and Egypt.

BARBARY STATES.

Morocco—Algiers—Tunis—Tripoli.*Algiers.*

282. Barbary is a hot, fruitful country, but miserably cultivated, extending from Cape Nun almost to Egypt. It includes a number of independent States.

It contains several large cities, which are usually built on a rising ground, presenting an appearance like that of Algiers in the engraving.

The people are proud, indolent, cruel, and vicious, gaining most of their wealth by piracy.

The empire of Morocco includes the former kingdoms of Tafilet and Fex. Barca and Augela are subject to Tripoli.

Questions on the map. (I.)—How is Barbary bounded? Name the states of Barbary, and their capitals. Which is the most eastern? and which the most western? What country in Europe is North of Morocco? What one North of Tripoli? What chain of mountains is there in Barbary?

(II.) What place in Morocco is on the Straits of Gibraltar? What seaports are on the Atlantic? Which is the largest? What two cities are in the interior? Where is the Spanish fortress of Ceuta? (*See map of Europe.*) What European settlement of

the Spanish is in Algiers? What other city is there beside the capital? In what direction from Algiers is Tunis? In what direction is Tripoli? Where is Derna? Where is the Great Desert? What mines are found in it? What name is given to the coast West of the Desert?

FEZZAN.

283. Fezzan is a large fertile spot or oasis, in the midst of sandy deserts, intensely hot in the summer. It is chiefly important as a centre of trade for the caravans which cross the deserts.

The people are ignorant, rude, and vicious. They are tributary to Tripoli.

Questions on the map. (I.)—What country is East of the Desert? What is its chief town? What country lies between Fezzan and Egypt? What places are between Barca and Egypt?

EGYPT.



The Great Pyramids.

284. Egypt is celebrated for the wonderful pyramids, near Cairo, and other works of the ancient inhabitants.

It is a hot, but very fruitful country, which is watered by the overflowing of the Nile, instead of rain.

There are some professed Christians in Egypt, but the people are generally in the lowest state of ignorance and oppression.

Questions on the map. (I.)—How is Egypt bounded? What is the capital, and on what river? What is the principal seaport? What two other seaports are there, and where?

(II.) What considerable place is above Cairo on the Nile? What three places are above Siout? What seaport is West of the river? What place is at the head of the Red Sea? What country of Asia is North of Egypt?

MIDDLE REGIONS OF AFRICA.

*Senegambia—Guinea—Lower Guinea—Zanguebar—
Nubia—Abyssinia—Soudan.*

285. Most of the countries of Africa lie between the two Tropics, and the climate, productions, and character of the people, in these countries, are such as is usual in the Torrid Zone. (*See* § 86 to 92.)

The climate of some is varied by their situation as to mountains and the sea. (*See* § 113 to 114.)

286. Gold dust, ivory, gums, and slaves are the principal articles of commerce in these regions. They are transported by caravans of merchants, which are continually passing from the interior to the seaports, and places of trade on the coast.

287. Rice and cotton are produced in great abundance, and furnish most of the food and clothing of the people.

288. Some nations of Africa are distinguished for native mildness and hospitality, but many are treacherous and cruel; and indolence is a universal characteristic.

It is said, that in some parts thousands of square miles of fertile and well peopled countries have been desolated by wars, made to supply Europeans and Americans with slaves.

289. The middle regions of Africa may be divided

into Eastern and Western Africa, on the coasts ; and Central Africa in the interior.

Questions. (1.)—Where do most of the countries of Africa lie ? What can you say generally of their climate, productions, and people ? What chain of mountains probably passes through the middle regions of Africa, from East to West ? (*See map.*) What great divisions of middle Africa lie North of these mountains, and what South ? How is the state of particular countries varied ? What are the chief articles of commerce ? What the most important productions ? What can you say of the nations of this region ? What effect has the slave trade ? How may these regions of Africa be divided ? What countries are on the eastern coast of Africa ? What on the western ? What in Central Africa ?

WESTERN AFRICA.

Senegambia—Upper Guinea—Lower Guinea.



Sacrifice of victims in Dahomey.

290. The nations of Western Africa are chiefly pagans, and some of them excessively cruel. In Dahomey there is an annual festival, on which a great number of victims are sacrificed, and their skulls are used to pave and adorn the palace of the king.

UPPER GUINEA.

291. Upper Guinea is a hot, but fertile country. It is divided into a number of barbarous kingdoms, of which Ashantee is the most powerful and warlike.

Many of these nations are distinguished for boldness and ferocity, and some for their skill in arts.

Coomassie, the capital of Ashantee, and some other places, are said to be large cities.

Questions on the map. (I.)—What are the principal kingdoms in Upper Guinea, and what are their capitals? What is that of Ashantee? What two European settlements are on the coast, and where? What names are given to different parts of this coast? Where is the English colony of Sierra Leone? What missionary station near it? What island South of it? Where is Teemboo? Where is the American colony of Liberia?

SENEGAMBIA.

292. This country is inhabited by tribes of Negroes, called Foulahs and Jaloffs, and is sometimes considered as a part of Guinea, or of Soudan.

It is fertile, but intensely hot. Many Europeans trade here, to obtain gold, ivory, gums, and slaves.

The coast between Senegambia and Morocco is the resort of tribes who live a wandering life, plundering and treating cruelly all who land or are shipwrecked on it.

Questions on the map. (I.)—What rivers pass through Senegambia? What seaport and place of trade is at the North? What towns? What European settlement? What name is given to the coast between Senegambia and Morocco?

LOWER GUINEA.

293. Lower Guinea is a hot and fertile country, but very unhealthy for Europeans. It is divided into several kingdoms, of which Congo is the principal.

The Portuguese have settlements on this coast, and have been most active in carrying on the slave trade, of which it is now the principal seat.

The king of Congo and many of his people profess to be Catholics, but Paganism is the common religion.

Questions on the map. (1.)—What is the principal kingdom of Lower Guinea? What is the capital? What kingdom is North of it? What is its capital? What name is given to this coast? Where is Angola? What place is in it? Where is Benguela, and what is its capital? Where is Angoy? What mountains are in Lower Guinea? Where is the River Zaire, and what is its size? What islands are there on the coast? Where is the Bembaroque? What country is between this and South Africa?

EASTERN AFRICA.

COAST OF ZANGUEBAR.



Conveyances of the rich on the Eastern Coast.

294. The rich Negroes in Zanguebar are carried about by slaves, in a kind of hammock, or in chairs.

The coast of Zanguebar includes a number of kingdoms, between the Equator and the Tropic of Capricorn. The Portuguese traders formerly governed several of

these countries, and they are little known to other nations.

Questions on the map. (1.)—What mountains are West of Zanguebar? What lake? What is the chief river known? What European fort is on it? Mention some of the principal kingdoms and cities on this coast? What islands are there on this coast?

ADEL, AJAN, BERBERA, AND MAGADOXA.

295. These are countries on the eastern extremity of Africa, very little known to civilized nations. They abound in myrrh, incense, and gums, of which large quantities are exported.

Questions on the map. (1.)—Where do these countries lie, and in what latitude? What are some of the principal places? What river is on the North, and what straits are near it?

NUBIA.

296. Nubia is a parched, barren country, except on the banks of the Nile.

It is divided into a number of small kingdoms. The people are barbarous, ferocious, and ignorant; some wandering, and others settled in towns.

Travellers in the deserts of Nubia and other parts of Africa are in danger of being overwhelmed by clouds or pillars of sand, moving with the wind.

Questions on the map. (1.)—How is Nubia bounded? What is the capital, and where? What is the chief place of Dongola? What port is on the Red Sea? What celebrated resort of pilgrims is opposite to it in Asia? (See 136. c.)

ABYSSINIA.

*Mountains of Abyssinia.*

297. Abyssinia is a rough, mountainous country, but generally fertile, and well watered.

It is cooler than Nubia, but still hot and unhealthy in many parts.

The religion is a corrupt mixture of Judaism and Christianity.

The people are ignorant and brutal, always engaged in civil wars, and accustomed to eat raw flesh.

Questions on the map. (I.)—How is Abyssinia bounded? What is the capital? What branches of the Nile rise in it? What river is on the South? What lake? Where is Axum, the ancient capital? What place is near it? What is the principal seaport?

CENTRAL AFRICA.

SOUDAN, OR NIGRITIA.



The King of Darfur receiving homage.

298. The king of Darfur, in Soudan, obliges all who come before him to fall on their faces, while a herald stands by him, constantly proclaiming that he is the greatest of monarchs.

Soudan, or Nigritia, is considered as extending from Nubia and Abyssinia to Senegambia, between the Tropic of Cancer and the Mountains of the Moon.

It is a hot region, but productive, except the Desert of Sahara.

It contains many powerful kingdoms, but little known. They are chiefly inhabited by Moors in the North, and Negroes in the other parts.

Questions on the map. (1.)—How is Nigritia bounded? What desert does it contain, and what mines are in it? What rivers? What mountains on the South? What kingdoms in the West? What are their capitals?

(II.) What powerful nation borders on the desert N. of Kashna and Houssa? What kingdoms are E. of Houssa, and what places? What N. of these?

ETHIOPIA.

299. This name has been given to the interior of Africa, South of the Jibbel Kumra; but its geography is unknown.

SOUTH AFRICA.



Hottentots and their Villages.

300. South Africa lies South of the Tropic of Capricorn, embracing the Colony of the Cape, and several independent nations, of whom the Hottentots are best known.

The other tribes of South Africa, North of the Colony, are often classed under the general name of Caffres.

The Hottentots build their villages in a circular form; and oxen are used generally among them instead of horses.

301. The climate of South Africa is warm, but seldom oppressive; the nights are cool, and great and sudden

changes of temperature are frequent, in consequence of its being nearly surrounded by the ocean.

302. Fine wines are produced here, and coffee, tea, and other plants of warm climates may be cultivated.

303. The Caffres and Hottentots appear to have had scarcely any ideas of religion, and are grossly ignorant, but they are mild, hospitable, and docile. Other tribes are little above the brutes in character and manners.

304. By the efforts of Christian missionaries a number of settlements of these tribes have been formed, and they have begun to receive some knowledge and civilization.

Questions (I.)—How is South Africa bounded? (*see map.*) What is the southern cape? What colony and principal tribe does it embrace? What customs of the Hottentots can you mention? What is the climate of South Africa? What reasons can you find from the map, that South Africa should have so temperate a climate, near the Torrid Zone? (*See 113, 114.*) What mountains are the principal? What rivers empty themselves into the Atlantic Ocean, and of what size? What one runs into the Indian Ocean? What can you say of the Caffres and Hottentots? What is the state of other tribes? What has been done to improve them? What missionary station is there on the Orange river? (*See map.*) What is the principal place North of this river?

COLONY OF THE CAPE.

305. This colony was settled 200 years ago by the Dutch, who are still the most numerous white inhabitants; but it now belongs to the British.

The Dutch farmers, or boors, are generally indolent and ignorant; and many of them are almost as filthy and brutal as the natives. Within a few years, many British settlers have gone to this colony.

Questions on the map. (I.)—How is the Colony of the Cape bounded? What is the capital, and what missionary station do you find? What rivers, mountains, and bays are around it?

AFRICAN ISLANDS.

*Volcano in the Sea.*

306. The Azores, or Western Islands of Africa, are exposed to violent earthquakes. In the year 1811, a volcano burst out in the sea, and formed a new island.

307. The African islands, except the Cape Verd Isles, enjoy a healthy and delightful climate, and produce the finest fruits of warm countries.

308. Others, beside the Azores, contain volcanic mountains; most of which, like the Peak of Teneriffe, have now ceased to burn.

Questions on the map. (1.)—What are the most northerly of the African Islands? What three other groups of islands are on the western coast of Africa? What are the chief islands on the eastern coast? What mountains have they?

ISLANDS WEST OF AFRICA.

309. The islands on the western coast of Africa are all claimed by the Portuguese, except the Canaries, belonging to Spain, and St. Helena, the late prison of the Emperor Napoleon, possessed by the British.

310. St. Matthew's and Ascension were uninhabited

till lately ; but a British settlement has recently been formed on the latter. The rest are well peopled, chiefly with Spaniards and Portuguese, who have intermarried with the natives.

311. These islands are celebrated for producing fine wines, of which the best are found in Madeira and Teneriffe.

Questions on the map. (I.)—What are the principal islands among the Azores? What countries of Europe lie in the same latitude? What islands are next South of these, and what countries are opposite them? What are the chief islands next South of Madeira? What are the principal of the Cape Verd Isles?

(II.) What small islands do you find on this part of the coast? What islands do you find between Cape Palmas and the Cape of Good Hope?

ISLANDS EAST OF AFRICA.

312. MADAGASCAR is the largest island in the world, except New Holland and Borneo.

The climate is healthy and agreeable, and the soil fertile in the productions of the Torrid Zone.

The people are intelligent, mild, and hospitable. They are superior in knowledge, arts, and civilization to the Africans on the continent.

313. The islands of BOURBON and MAURITIUS are much resorted to by ships from India. Bourbon belongs to France, and Mauritius to Great Britain.

Questions on the map. (I.)—Near what coast of Africa is Madagascar? Where are Bourbon and Mauritius?

314. TRAVELS ON THE MAP OF AFRICA.

You see from the accounts of Africa, that it will not be very safe for you to travel into the interior. It will be best to confine yourself chiefly to its coasts.

How will you go to find those countries of Africa which were once celebrated for science and learning? (*See 280.*) What states do you pass after entering the Mediterranean, on your way

to Egypt? What danger will there be in sailing near them? (282.) How can you go to Alexandria by land from Barbary? What river do you go up, to reach the capital of Egypt? Shall you often meet with rain? (284.) What objects of curiosity shall you find?

You must endeavour to guard against a disease of the eyes prevalent in Egypt.

What danger should you meet with in going by land to Abyssinia? (296.) As the cataracts of the Nile will prevent your going up this river to Abyssinia, what course will you take, to go by sea? What can you say of the Abyssinians?

How would you go to discover whether the Niger flows into the Nile? What kingdoms would you pass through? What course will you take from Abyssinia to reach the Cape of Good Hope by water? What can you say of the coast you pass? (294.) How do you like their mode of travelling? What islands do you pass, and what do you know of them?

When you draw near the Cape you must be prepared for storms, which are dreadful here.

What bays and rivers must you pass in going round to Capetown? What do you think of the inhabitants? (300, 303, 305.) How do you like the climate here? Where shall you find the most distant missionary station of South Africa? Look on the map, and see what reason there is why you should not cross the country to Lower Guinea.

Lower Guinea will scarcely repay you for a visit, and it will be very dangerous to health and life.

At what islands can you stop to refresh yourself on this coast? What is the course to Upper Guinea? What articles of commerce can you obtain here? (286.) What countries are now North of you? How will you go to Sierra Leone?

If you visit the Cape Verd Islands, avoid that part of the ocean not far from them, called 'The Rains,' for you will find almost perpetual calms, with much rain and thunder.

How will you go to visit the principal African Islands which you have not seen? What course will you take to reach England?

315. CITIES AND TOWNS OF AFRICA.

A large part of Africa is in a state of barbarism, and therefore contains few large cities, or even considerable towns, in com-

parison with Europe and Asia. These are chiefly in Northern Africa, and most of them are greatly inferior to the chief cities of Europe and Asia in commerce, manufactures, and wealth, as well as in population. They are inferior to the poorest in Europe in their appearance, on account of the narrowness, irregularity, and filthiness of their streets. Even in Cairo and Fez the streets are often so narrow, that two camels cannot go abreast.

The houses, like those of the Asiatic cities on the Mediterranean, are generally built with flat roofs. They have a court in the centre, and are destitute of windows toward the street. Like other Mahometan cities, they have numerous mosques; and these, with the palaces of the sovereigns or governors, are usually the only handsome buildings. The houses are generally built of half-burnt brick, or a mixture of stones, earth, and mortar, whitened with lime. In Cairo, many are of stone; and some of the mosques and other public buildings in this city and in the cities of Barbary are built of stone or marble.

The cities of Egypt are usually distinguished for the grand and interesting remains of ancient cities and buildings which surround them.

Cairo exceeds any other city of Africa in magnitude and splendor. Its mosques and tombs are neat and often elegant, but its general appearance is miserable. It is resorted to for trade by merchants from the whole of western Asia and the interior of Africa.

Alexandria is the chief place of trade between Europe and Egypt. It is a city of considerable extent, but chiefly covered with the splendid remains of the ancient city. The most remarkable of these is the column commonly called Pompey's Pillar.

Rosetta is a modern town of some importance for trade, on the western mouth of the Nile. *Damietta*, on the eastern mouth, has an extensive commerce with Syria and Cyprus.

The cities on the coast of Barbary are built, like many others on the Mediterranean, on ground which rises from the water. Most of them are fortified, and are places of some trade. They have more resemblance to those of Europe than any others in Africa. *Tripoli* has broad, straight streets; and is superior to most cities of Barbary in beauty. *Tunis* is situate on a salt lake connected with the sea, a few miles from the ruins of the ancient Carthage.

Algiers is well known as a nest of pirates, and has been the place of slavery of many Christians.

Morocco has lost much of its former importance. It is about 12 miles from the foot of Mount Atlas, on a fertile plain interspersed with palm trees.

Fez is the chief resort of the Arabs of the desert for trade.

Mequinez is the largest city of Morocco, and superior to others in the politeness and hospitality of its inhabitants. *Tangier* and *Mogadore* are places of some trade.

In the MIDDLE REGIONS OF AFRICA, the towns and cities usually consist of low, mud-walled huts, with conical roofs, thatched with leaves or straw. They are spread over a great extent of ground, and rather resemble a camp than a city. They are often surrounded with a low wall, which is also built of earth or mud. The palace of the king is usually only a collection of huts surrounded by a wall.

Sego, the capital of the kingdom of Bambarra, is a city of considerable size. Its mosques are numerous. *Sansanding* is the seat of an extensive and important commerce, in the same kingdom. *Teemboo* is a considerable town.

Tombuctoo, and *Sackatoo* the capital of Haoussa, appear to be the most important cities of the interior of Africa. They are said to be large cities, and places of considerable trade.

Cobbe is the principal town of Darfur, and a place of extensive commerce, chiefly inhabited by merchants.

Sennaar is populous, and an important place of trade.

Gondar, the capital of Abyssinia, is situate on a hill surrounded by a deep valley. Like other towns of Abyssinia, it has several Christian churches.

Melinda is a large handsome town. Its houses are built of stone, and many of them are magnificent. *St. Salvador*, the capital of Congo, has a number of Catholic churches.

The towns of Upper Guinea are not well known. *Coommassie* is said to be regularly built, with neat cane huts.

In SOUTH AFRICA, the kraals or villages of the natives are usually composed of huts, formed of twigs, or branches of trees, plastered with clay, and placed in a circle, around an enclosure which contains their cattle. There are a number of villages of natives collected around the missionary stations of South Africa. Some of them present a handsome appearance,

and have many of the improvements of civilized life. *Latakoi* is the largest native town yet known in South Africa, and contains 8000 or 10,000 inhabitants.

Tananarive is a large, well-built, inland town of Madagascar and the capital of one of its principal kingdoms.

European settlements.—The French, Portuguese, and Spaniards, have a number of settlements on the coast of Africa for the purposes of trade, especially in slaves. *Mozambique* is the capital of the Portuguese settlements on the coast of Zanguebar and *Loanda*, on the coast of Angola. The chief French settlements are at *Goree*. *Elmina* is a Dutch fort. These settlements are usually mere fortresses. The towns of Africa and its islands, possessed by Europeans, are built like those of Europe.

Cape Town is the only place of importance in the Colony of the Cape. Its streets are traversed by canals planted with trees. Two thirds of the inhabitants are blacks.

The towns in the colony of Sierra Leone, of which *Freetown* is the principal, are pleasant, and neatly built. Most of the inhabitants are Africans of various nations, taken from slave ships and brought here to be instructed in religion and the arts of civilized life.

POLAR REGIONS.

ARCTIC, OR NORTH POLAR REGIONS.



Snow-huts in North Georgia.

316. Greenland and the neighbouring regions have usually been considered as belonging to North America ; but the channel of Barrow's Strait has been penetrated to 114° west longitude ; the sea has been seen at two places between this and Bhering's Straits, by Hearne, Franklin, and Mackenzie ; and it is probable there is no barrier but ice to interrupt the passage across.

It is proper therefore to consider the Arctic regions as a distinct division of the world.

317. They have not been fully explored ; but appear to comprise a considerable extent of land, of which North Georgia, Greenland, and the island of Spitzbergen, are the principal portions known.

318. The aspect of these regions is dreary and desolate in the extreme. The coasts only appear to be habitable ; and these present a surface of snow, varied with mountains of ice, during the greater part of the year. A scanty but beautiful vegetation appears for a short period in the summer. The interior is traversed by naked, barren mountains, covered with perpetual ice, and interspersed with vast glaciers.

319. The rivers are neither numerous nor large. The waters and torrents of the summer are chiefly converted into masses of ice during the winter ; and the inhabitants and travellers depend on melted snow for their drink. These dreary regions are but thinly inhabited either by men or animals.

Questions. (I.)—Do Greenland and the neighbouring regions belong to America ? What can you say of the Arctic Regions ? What is their aspect ? Have they rivers ? Mention some of the islands, bays, &c. (*See map of North America.*)

place. They wander in vast hordes or tribes, to find pasturage for their horses, camels, and sheep, and feed chiefly on the flesh and milk of these animals.

Tartary occupies almost the whole of the middle of Asia, from the Caspian Sea to the Pacific Ocean. It is divided into Chinese Tartary, lying East of the Belur Tag, subject to China ; and Independent Tartary, West of these mountains, many of the hordes of which pay tribute to the emperor of Russia.

INDEPENDENT TARTARY.

227. This country has a fine climate, and generally, a fertile soil, which is left uncultivated.

It was once the seat of a powerful empire, and abounds in the ruins of ancient cities.

The people are generally barbarous ; but in some parts they retain a small portion of civilization and knowledge. They belong to the European race.

Samarcand, the former capital, is said to be very large still. It contains a celebrated Mahometan school, or university.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Independent Tartary bounded ? What sea does it contain ? What rivers has it ? What is the capital ? What other city ?

CHINESE TARTARY.

228. This portion of Tartary occupies the greater part of the elevated plain, mentioned in the account of the middle regions of Asia.

In most parts it is very barren, and scarcely inhabited ; but the eastern portion contains a number of cities little known. The people belong to the Asiatic race.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Chinese Tartary bounded ? How is it separated from China ? What great river is there on the East ? What place on it ? What other principal places are in the eastern part ? What peninsula there, and what islands ?

What deserts in the interior? What places in the western part of Chinese Tartary? (*Clim.* 224; *Desert*, 43. b.)

TURKEY IN ASIA.



Turkish school.

229. This country was the original seat of the empire of the Turks, which now extends to Europe, and has its capital there.

It is warmer than Turkey in Europe, but the general character of the country and people is the same.

Like most eastern nations the Turks always sit cross-legged upon the floor. They often teach their children on a house-top, and they punish by striking the feet, which is called the *bastinado*.

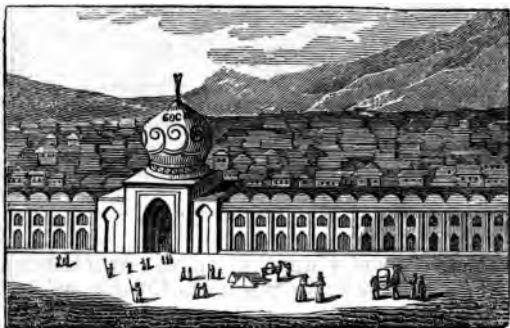
Armenia is inhabited by Christians, and many Greek Christians are scattered over other parts of Turkey.

The southern part is Palestine, or the Holy Land, formerly the residence of the Jews, with Jerusalem for its capital.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Turkey bounded? What is the capital? What chain of mountains is in Asia Minor?

(II.)—What are the three principal divisions? Where is Armenia? What rivers run from Turkey into the Persian Gulf? What port is on the Archipelago? What port on the Black Sea? What places are near the Black Sea? What cities on the Tigris, beginning at its source? Where is Jerusalem? What three seaports are in Syria? Where are Aleppo and Damascus? What island is on the coast of Syria?

PERSIA.



Ispahan.

230. A large part of Persia is covered with barren mountains and desert plains, and can only be traversed on camels or mules.

The air is cold and moist at the North, pure and serene in the middle, but extremely hot in the South.

Ispahan, the former capital, was one of the most splendid cities of Asia, but a large part of it is now in ruins.

The people are active, gay, polished, and hospitable; but dishonest, treacherous, and vicious.

Questions on the map.—How is Persia bounded? What is the capital? Where is Ispahan the former capital?

(II.)—Where is Erivan? What other cities are in the North? What seaport is on the Gulf of Persia? Where is Shiraz? Are there any considerable rivers?

EAST PERSIA.

CABULISTAN, AND BELOOCHISTAN.

231. The eastern part of Persia, which was separated from the rest some years ago, contains a number of distinct governments, most of which are tributary to the king of Cabul. It is therefore often called Cabulistan; and sometimes Afghanistan, from the Afghans, a part of its inhabitants.

Beloochistan, which occupies the southern portion, is said to be an independent State, but its condition is not well ascertained.

This country is mountainous, and therefore cooler than those around it, but abounds in dry and desert plains, which cause distressing heat in summer.

The people, especially the Afghans, are more active and warlike than their neighbours.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is East Persia bounded? What are the two principal divisions? What is the capital? What mountains are on the North?

(II.) What separates it from Hindoostan? What city has it East of the Indus? What city in the West, and of what size? What river and what city are in the South? What places near the mouth of the Indus?

TIBET.



Worship of the Grand Lama.

232. In Tibet the Grand Lama is the head of their religion and government. The people worship him as a divine being. When he dies, they believe his soul passes into the body of some child, who is sought and placed on the throne.

Tibet is a very dry, cold, unfruitful country, in the midst of mountains, subject to the emperor of China.

The people are mild, but indolent, timid, and superstitious. They have much more knowledge and skill in the arts than the Tartars.

Questions on the map.—(1.) How is Tibet bounded? What is the capital? What large rivers rise in the mountains of Tibet? What is the height of the highest mountain? (See *Table of Mountains*.)

NAPPAUL AND BOOTAN.

233. These two kingdoms lie between Tibet and Hindoostan, and are tributary to Tibet.

They properly belong to Southern Asia, and have

a warm, but fine climate, like the North of Italy. On ascending the mountains near them, the inhabitants find perpetual spring on their sides, and unchanging winter on the tops.

Questions.—(1.) What is the situation of Napaul and Bootan? What can you say of the climate and mountains? Why are they not very hot like Hindoostan? (*See 112.*)

JAPAN.

234. The empire of Japan includes three islands of small extent, but extremely populous.

It is a rugged country, and is subject to extremes of heat and cold; but it is highly cultivated, and is said to be very rich in gold and silver.

The people are very ingenious; and are considered superior in arts, sciences, and good laws, to most if not all other nations of Asia.

Questions on the map.—(1.) Where are the islands of Japan, and how many are there? Which is the largest? What is the capital? What is the second city? Where is the chief place of trade, Nangasaki?

SOUTHERN ASIA.

*Arabia—Hindoostan—Burmah—Anam—Siam—
Malaya—China.*

235. The southern countries of Asia lie generally on the Indian Ocean, between 10° and 30° N. latitude.

China extends North to 40° of latitude, and Malaya, South nearly to the Equator.

236. All these countries, except the northern parts of China, have the climate and productions of the Torrid Zone, and the choicest plants of Asia.

They abound in rice, which is the principal food of the inhabitants, and in cotton and silk, from which most of their clothing is made.

237. Except Arabia, they are highly cultivated ; but so crowded with inhabitants, that the common people are miserably poor, and are often led by want to destroy or expose their children.

Many of these nations are, from necessity, more active and industrious than others found in the Torrid Zone.

238. The chief exports of Southern Asia and its islands are coffee, tea, gums, opium, spices, precious stones, and metals, with numerous manufactures of silk and cotton.

Questions.—(1.) Where do the southern countries of Asia lie ? What countries are included in this division of Asia ? How far do China and Malaya extend ? What can you say of the climate and productions ? What articles for food and clothing are found here ? What is the state of population, and of the common people ? What effect does necessity produce on the character of the people ? What are the chief exports ?

ARABIA.



Robbers in Arabia.

239. The interior of Arabia is inhabited by wandering Arabs, who live in tents, and subsist by pasturage and robbery.

The inhabitants of the coast live in towns and cities, and are much more advanced in civilization. (*See chart of the world.*)

The climate of Arabia is very hot and dry, and the interior is a sandy desert, where water is seldom found. This was the 'wilderness,' which the Israelites crossed in going from Egypt to Canaan.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Arabia bounded? What do you find in the interior? What mountains are the principal? What remarkable mountain is near the Red Sea? Are there any considerable rivers? What is the capital?

(II.)—What is the port of Mecca on the Red Sea? Which way from Mecca is Medina? What is the principal place in the East? Where is Mocha? What place is near it? What place in the S. E., and how situate? What Arabian island is near Cape Guardafui?

INDIA.

240. This name comprehends the two peninsulas of Southern Asia which are East of Arabia, divided into India within the Ganges, and India without, or East of the Ganges, called also Farther India.

The name India, or East Indies, is often used to include China and the Asiatic Islands also.

These peninsulas are remarkable for the number and size of their rivers, which, united with the heat of the climate, make them the most fertile countries on Earth.

HINDOOSTAN,

Or India within the Ganges.*A Widow on the funeral pile of her Husband.*

241. It is one of the religious customs of the Hindoos, that widows should be burned alive, with the dead bodies of their husbands; and hundreds are thus destroyed every year.

Hindoostan is divided into a great number of small kingdoms; but the British govern almost all that portion which lies on the Bay of Bengal and the Ganges, and a part of the western coast near Bombay.

It is a very hot, but moist country, producing the finest fruits and plants in abundance. (*See 236, 237.*)

The people are effeminate, indolent, and extremely vicious.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Hindoostan bounded? What mountains are there on the North? What is the chief river? What three rivers are in the southern part? What is the capital? Where is Delhi, the former capital?

(II.)—Where is Agra? Mention the chief cities on the Ganges

in their order. What are the eastern and western coasts called? What places are on the eastern coast? What on the western coast? How is Bombay situate? What cities are in the interior of the southern part of Hindoostan? What in the western part? Where is Golconda, celebrated for its diamonds? What is the southern cape of Hindoostan? What small islands are near it? What large island? What missionary stations are there in Hindoostan?

CEYLON.

242. Ceylon is a large fertile island, which produces almost all the cinnamon brought from India.

It abounds in precious stones, and has a pearl fishery on its coast.

This island is possessed by the British. It contains a large number of native Catholics.

Questions on the map.—(I.) Where does Ceylon lie? What is the chief town? Where is Trincomalee?

FARTHER INDIA.

243. This part of India lies South of Tibet, between the Ganges and the Chinese Sea, including the empires of Burmah and Anam, with Siam, and Malaya.

BURMAH, or BURMAN EMPIRE.



Elephants carrying burdens.

244. The Burman empire produces very fine elephants, which are trained for riding and carrying burdens, and even assist in unlading ships.

This empire includes Ava, Pegu, and several small kingdoms, subdued by the more active and warlike Burmans.

The climate is cooler than that of Hindoostan, from the greater height of the land, but is still very hot.

The people are lively and intelligent, and acquainted with many of the arts; but they are extremely cruel in their punishments, and barbarous in many of their customs.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is the Burman Empire bounded? What is the chief river? What is the capital?

(II.)—What seaport is in the South? What places are on the River Irawaddy? Where is Arracan? (*Clim. & Prod.* 236, 237.)

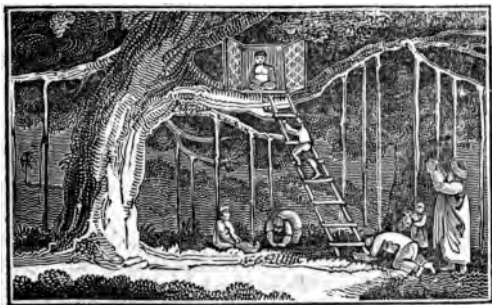
SIAM.

245. Siam is a small but rich and flourishing kingdom, with a climate and people like those of Burmah.

In Siam, as in many of the neighbouring countries, the inhabitants are obliged to build their houses on posts, to avoid the annual floods of their rivers, which cover the country with water, but render the soil very fertile.

Questions on the map.—(I.) Where does Siam lie? Is it a large kingdom? What is the capital? (*Prod.* 236—7.)

EMPIRE OF ANAM, OR TONKIN.

*Idol worship in Tonkin.*

246. The Empire of Anam is said to extend over all the countries east of Burmah and Siam, including Cochin-China, Cambodia, and Laos; but very little is known with certainty concerning these countries.

The Tonkinese worship idols under the banyan tree, as represented in the engraving.

Although they are very superstitious, they are generally intelligent, active, and industrious.

The empire is said to be one of the most powerful in Asia, and has a considerable naval force.

Questions on the map.—(I.) In what direction from Burmah is Anam? What countries does it embrace? How is it bounded? What river passes through it? What is the capital? What other principal place is there? What place is in Cambodia? What gulf is on the East, and what island? (*Clim. and Prod.* 236, 237.)

MALAYA.

247. Malaya, or Malacca, is a hot, but productive peninsula, containing many independent states.

The people of this peninsula are bold and enterprising, but remarkable for treachery and cruelty. Those of the interior are savages of the African race.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Malaya bounded? What is the chief town? (*Clim. and Prod.* 236, 237.)

CHINA.



River and Village in China.

248. China is an extensive country, but extremely populous.

It is remarkable for the tea plant, and for its beautiful porcelain ware, called china.

The soil is every where cultivated with the greatest care, but great numbers are obliged to live on the water in boats, and the poor suffer for want of food.

The people are ingenious and industrious, but timid, dishonest, and treacherous in their intercourse with strangers.

The Chinese formerly tried to defend themselves against the Tartars by a wall with gates and numerous towers, most of which still remains. It is sufficiently broad for several persons to ride abreast, extending 1500 miles, over rivers and lofty mountains.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is China bounded? Where is the Chinese wall? In what latitude does China lie? What must we suppose as to the climate of the various parts? What are the two chief rivers? What is the capital?

(II.) What are the principal ports and cities? Where is the most remarkable canal of China? What large island lies near the coast? What small cluster beyond it? What countries of Asia are subject to China?

EAST INDIA OR ASIATIC ISLANDS.



Children preparing to devour their Parents.

249. The E. India Islands may be considered as extending to 10° S. latitude, and 130° W. longitude.

250. They produce the finest fruits, gums, spices, and minerals. They also abound with wild animals, among which are the orang outang, crocodile, tiger, and rhinoceros.

The natives of these islands are chiefly Pagans; and some of them devour their parents when they become old. The parents descend from a tree, and suffer themselves to be killed, saying: "The fruit is ripe and it must be eaten."

251. These islands are divided into three principal

groups ; the Sunda Isles, the Molucca or Spice Isles, and the Philippine Isles.

THE SUNDA ISLES.

252. The Sunda Isles include Sumatra, Java, and other islands south of Borneo and Celebez.

They furnish gold, diamonds, and gums ; but pepper is the most important production.

They are inhabited by a mixture of Chinese, Malays, and natives, and have much commerce. The interior is little known.

Sumatra has a ridge of mountains running through it, the highest being loftier than the Alps ; which render the climate generally agreeable, and in some parts cold.

Java is a beautiful and fertile island, but very unhealthy. It is now subject to the king of the Netherlands.

Questions on the map.—(1.) Which way from Malacca is Sumatra ? What straits separate it ? In what zone is it ? Where is the British settlement of Bencoolen ? What other place do you find ? Which way from Sumatra is Java ? What straits are between them ? What is the capital ? What are the other principal islands among the Sunda Isles ?

BORNEO AND CELEBEZ.

253. Borneo is a very large island, entirely possessed by the natives.

It is rich in gold, diamonds, pearls, and valuable plants, and is remarkable as the residence of the orang-outang, an animal very much like man.

254. Celebez is a fruitful island, little known, with a settlement belonging to the Dutch at Macassar. The natives are said to be ingenious and brave, but ferocious and cruel.

Questions on the map.—(1.) Where is Borneo ? What is the

apital? Between what islands does Celebez lie? Where is Tacassar?

THE MOLUCCAS, OR SPICE ISLANDS.

255. The Moluccas, or Spice Islands, are remarkable for producing spices, and especially the nutmeg and clove. They now belong to the Netherlands.

Questions on the map.—(1.) What islands are included in the Moluccas? Which is the largest? Mention the relative situation of the others.

PHILIPPINE ISLES.

256. The Philippine Isles are possessed by the Spaniards, who have derived great revenues from them. They produce gold and other metals, with cotton, rice, and sugar in great abundance.

Questions on the map.—Which is the largest of the Philippine Isles? What others are the principal? What is the chief city, and its size?

AUSTRALIA.



Houses of Australia.

257. Most of the people of Australia live in rude

huts of bark, often built on floats, and some even sleep on trees.

258. These nations are in a ruder state of society than any others yet known, without any religion or knowledge of a future state, so far as can be discovered.

Many tribes among them are without huts, clothes, boats, or implements for hunting and fishing ; and feed on fruits, shell-fish, or even on caterpillars and worms.

The people of New Holland, and New Guinea, and the islands near the latter, are of the African race. Those of the New Hebrides, New Zealand, and the more southern isles, resemble the Asiatics.

259. Very little is yet known of this portion of the world, except the coasts. English colonies are now settled in New Holland and Van Diemen's Land, and many persons emigrate thither every year. The climate and soil are very favourable to agriculture.

Questions.—(1.) What can you say of the houses of the Australians? What is their state of civilization generally? What can you say of some tribes? Of what races are the inhabitants? What is known of these countries?

Questions on the map.—(1.) Between what oceans does Australia lie? What are the two largest islands? What are some of the smaller ones E. of New Guinea? What West of this island? What straits are between New Holland and New Guinea? What islands are E. of New Holland? What one is S. of it, and what straits separate this from New Holland? What considerable island is S. E. of New Holland? What are some of the capes of New Holland?

NEW HOLLAND.

260. New Holland is an extensive island, only one quarter less than Europe.

The people of New Holland generally resemble the Africans except in the straightness of their

hair; but some are found among them of the Malay race.

The British have established a settlement at Port Jackson, to which they send criminals from England.

VAN DIEMEN'S LAND, the island south of New Holland, is also settled by the British.

Questions on the map (1.)—What is the comparative size of New Holland? What Gulf is on the N. of New Holland? What names are given to the northern, eastern, and western coasts? Where is Port Jackson? Where is Sidney Cove? What missionary station is near it? What other in Australia? Where does Van Diemen's Land lie? What settlement is there on it?

NEW ZEALAND.

261. New Zealand consists of two large, fertile islands, which enjoy a mild climate like that of France.

The people are tall and well formed, and more civilized than in any other portion of Australia. They are brave and generous in many respects; but they eat the bodies of their enemies killed in war.

One of the kings has received Christian missionaries, who are endeavouring to introduce civilization and Christianity among the people.

Questions on the map (1.)—How many islands are there belonging to New Zealand? What straits divide them? (*See map of the world.*) In what direction are they from New Holland?

NEW GUINEA AND OTHER ISLANDS.

262. NEW GUINEA, NEW BRITAIN, and the neighbouring islands, lying in the north-eastern part of Australia, have been little examined.

They are rich in vegetable productions, and are distinguished as the chief residence of the bird of Paradise.

263. **NEW CALEDONIA** and the **NEW HEBRIDES** are said to be barren and rocky islands. The people build neat huts, and subsist on roots and fish.

Questions (I.)—What islands lie North of New Holland? What are East of New Holland? What can you say of them?

POLYNESIA.



Human Sacrifice in Polynesia.

264. Polynesia includes the islands in the Pacific Ocean, which lie east of the Philippine Islands and Australia. (*See map of the world.*) In almost all these islands, they have been accustomed to sacrifice human victims to their gods.

265. The climate of these islands is generally delightful, and they abound in fine fruits, especially the bread-fruit, which is used instead of bread.

266. The people are remarkably mild, polite, and ingenious, for barbarians; but dishonest, vicious, and cruel in many of their customs.

267. Most of the nations of Polynesia are Pagans; but those of the Society and Sandwich Islands have de-

stroyed their idols and temples, and received Christian missionaries.

Questions.—What is Polynesia? What custom has been generally prevalent? In what zone do most of these islands lie? What is their climate? What are some of their productions? What is the character of the people? What is their religion?

ISLANDS NORTH OF THE EQUATOR.

268. The inhabitants of the PELEW ISLANDS are very hospitable to strangers, and remarkable for honesty and chastity.

269. The CAROLINES are resorted to by ships after voyages in the Pacific Ocean, on account of their fine air and climate.

270. The SANDWICH ISLANDS are supposed to contain 400,000 inhabitants; Owhyhee is 180 miles long and 72 broad. Christian missionaries from the North American States are now instructing the people of these islands.

Questions on the map (1.)—What groups of islands are North of the Equator? In what direction from the Philippine Isles are the Ladrone and Caroline Isles? In what longitude are the Sandwich Islands? Which is the largest of the Sandwich Islands? What others are the principal, and in what direction from Owhyhee? What are some of the small islands lying between the Sandwich and Caroline Isles?

ISLANDS SOUTH OF THE EQUATOR.

271. The people of the FRIENDLY ISLANDS are remarkable for industry, neatness, and skill in agriculture and some kinds of manufactures.

272. The people of the NAVIGATORS' ISLES are uncommonly stout and tall, and more ferocious than their neighbours.

273. The people of the SOCIETY ISLANDS are the

first example of a nation converted to Christianity by the efforts of missionaries in modern times.

274. The people of the MARQUESAS are said to be almost as fair as Europeans, with regular forms and features.

Questions on the map. (I.)—What are the principal groups of islands South of the Equator? In what longitude are the Friendly and Navigators' Isles? What is the principal island among the Friendly Islands? What among the Navigators' Isles? In what direction are the Society Isles from the Friendly Isles? What are the chief of these islands? Where are the Marquesas? In what longitude are these islands? What single islands lie N. and E. of these groups?

275. TRAVELS ON THE MAP,

In Asia, Australia, and Polynesia.

If you wish to travel in Asia it will be best to embark for Smyrna, where many English vessels go to obtain opium, figs and other fruits, and silks.

Describe your course from London to Smyrna. (*See map of the world.*) What kind of people do you expect to see there? (207, 229.) Which way will you go to visit Ephesus? (*See map of Europe.*)

Travellers in Asiatic Turkey usually suffer their beards to grow, and dress in robes, and turbans, and slippers; because the Turks often insult, and even kill, those they know to be Christians, and think it is no crime.

Through what seas and straits must you pass to visit Constantinople? (*See map of Europe.*) How must you sit and eat here? What is the nearest Russian port to Constantinople? What sea must you cross to visit Circassia? Where is Astrachan?

In the eastern part of Siberia you would be amused at being drawn by dogs; but you will spend your time more profitably in other parts of the world, than in taking the long, cold, and difficult journey through it.

What have other travellers found in Siberia, and how is it used as a place of punishment? (218.) Through what port on the Caspian can you pass, to see Teflis, the capital of Georgia? In

what direction will you go to visit Jerusalem? What places shall you pass, and what can you say of them?

Do not fail to visit Mount Ararat, in Armenia, on which the Ark rested after the deluge.

What can you say of Jerusalem and Syria? Who formerly lived here? and what great events have taken place? (229.)

In what direction is Egypt from Jerusalem? Where will you find the splendid ruins of Palmyra? (*See map of Africa.*)

If you wish to see the Arabian desert, and visit Mount Sinai, you must carry water with you in bags of skins; and procure camels, which can drink, at once, enough for several days.

What is the direction of Mecca from Mount Sinai? In what direction is Mocha, which produces the finest coffee?

Which are most civilized, the Arabs on the coast or in the interior? (239.) What port will you find at the head of the Red Sea? (*See map of Africa.*) What course will you take by sea, to go to Bushire in Persia?

Observe in the Persian Gulf the poor divers, who are slaves, obliged to hazard their lives in procuring the pearl-oysters.

In what direction will you go to the ancient capital of Persia? Where is the modern capital, and what can you say of these cities? How is Persia divided? (231.) How will you go to the eastern portion of it? Are the people of this country like those of West Persia?

What interesting objects shall you see in Independent Tartary? (227.) How do you like their mode of living here and their food? (226.) What mountains must you cross to go into Chinese Tartary? What country will then be near you?

You may now go to see the Grand Lama. (*See 232.*) Remember, when you go to visit a great man in Asia, always to carry a present with you of some value.

What desert must you cross to reach Eastern Tartary? Shall you find any cities there?

What small but wealthy kingdom is now East of you? What wall must you cross to go into China? If you are permitted to travel in China, (which will not be unless you are in company with an ambassador) which way will you go to the capital? What is your course thence to Nankin, and to Canton? What is the general state of the people? (248.)

You may now lay aside all your thick clothing, for it will be of no use to you in these countries.

How will you go to visit all the capitals of India without the Ganges? What mode of conveyance shall you find? (244.) What kind of houses? (245.) Will you venture to Malacca? (See 247.) In what direction will you go to Calcutta?

Do the Hindoos need any instruction and reformation? (241.) To what neighbouring country can you go to avoid the heat? (233.) What island lies South of Hindoostan, and what spice can you obtain there? (242.)

In the other islands of Asia you will only be able to visit the European settlements. Beware, as you go, of the treacherous Malays; who often visit vessels in a friendly manner, and then slaughter every man on board.

What course will you take to visit the chief European settlements in the islands of Asia, beginning at Sumatra? Describe the islands you will see on your voyage, so far as known, ending your course at the Spice Islands. How do you like the appearance and customs of the people in Australia? What Europeans shall you find in New Holland? What missionary stations shall you find in this portion of the world?

What Christian nation shall you find in Polynesia? (273.) Describe the islands you pass in going to them. (271, 272.)

When you reach Otaheite, you will find many Christian churches, and the people beginning to be industrious, and anxious to be acquainted with books.

What islands are North East of these? What can you say of them? (274.) In what direction will you go to find the Sandwich Islands? What course will you take to go home round Cape Horn, and what countries shall you pass?

276. CITIES OF ASIA.

Asia abounds with large cities, but much inferior in their appearance to those of Europe. The buildings are generally mean, and crowded with inhabitants. The streets are extremely narrow, irregular, and filthy, and not usually paved.

In Western Asia the houses of the rich are usually of stone, or of brick, which are sometimes only sun-dried. They are generally built around a court or space in the centre, from which they re-

ceive most of their light and air, and which is frequently adorned with gardens and fountains. The houses are often magnificent within ; but they have few or no windows toward the street. They present to the traveller only a dismal succession of high walls, with here and there a lattice, and seem like a range of prisons. The roofs are usually flat, so that the inhabitants can pass from one house to another without descending into the street. They frequently sleep on the house-top, in the hot season. The houses of the poor are usually low and mean, built of mud, or a mixture of small stones and mortar.

Instead of churches, the Mahometan cities are adorned with mosques, which are often very splendid. At the side of each mosque are minarets, or lofty circular towers, with a gallery near the top, from which a crier calls to the people at the hours of prayer.

The cities of Turkey, as well as those of Africa on the Mediterranean, are frequently visited by the plague, which destroys vast numbers of the inhabitants.

The cities of Eastern Asia (except a few in Hindoostan) are poorly built, and are much inferior to those of Western Asia. They are generally low, thatched huts, formed of mud or of bamboo. Even the palace of the emperor of China is only a collection of mean cottages, richly gilded, and hung with splendid curtains and other ornaments. These cities are built of such slight materials, that they are frequently destroyed by fire, but are easily rebuilt. The temples and pagodas are generally the only buildings which have any beauty ; and these are often splendidly adorned with gold and gilding, especially in China and Burmah.

Most of the cities of Asia are surrounded with walls, usually of mud or sun-dried bricks. Many of them are partially in ruins, or surrounded with the ruins of ancient cities.

Astrachan is a place of great trade, situate on an island in the Volga. Its population is a mixed assemblage of various nations. *Irkutsk*, the principal town of Eastern Siberia, is a place of considerable trade and population, resembling European cities in its churches and public buildings. *Tobolsk* and *Tomsk* are important, on account of the trade carried on through them between Russia and China. *Teftis* is noted for its warm baths.

Samarcand was formerly the most renowned city of the East.

Bucharia is a place of considerable trade and importance. Both are noted for their Mahometan colleges.

Aleppo is the principal city of Asiatic Turkey. *Damascus* is beautifully situate on the river Barraddy. Both these cities are adorned with many fine buildings, and are important for their manufactures and commerce. *Smyrna* is the chief seat of foreign trade in Turkey. *Bagdad* is also an important seat of commerce, but meanly built. *Jerusalem* is built on the ruins of the ancient city. It is much resorted to by Christian pilgrims, and still preserves a degree of magnificence.

Teheran is chiefly important as the residence of the king and court of Persia. *Ispahan*, the former capital, is still the first commercial city of Persia. It was formerly a city of immense size, and the principal mosques and palaces are still very grand. Its ruins are several miles in extent. *Shiras* is celebrated for its fine climate, and for the beauty of its environs, as well as for its colleges. *Bushire* is the chief seaport of Persia.

Mecca is celebrated as the birthplace of Mahomet. It is well built, and derives great wealth from the immense concourse of Mahometan pilgrims.

Medina is a meanly built town, only remarkable for the tomb of Mahomet. The mosque which contains it is magnificent, supported by 400 columns of black marble, with 300 lamps, continually burning. *Sana* is considered the largest and most populous city of Arabia. *Mocha* is the chief seaport of Arabia, and the seat of its trade with Europe.

Cabul is an ancient city. It has an extensive trade with Tartary, Persia, and India. *Peshawer* is one of the residences of the king of Cabul, and the resort of people from all parts of India and Western Asia.

Calcutta is the metropolis of British India. Its commerce is very extensive, and it is inhabited by merchants from every part of the globe. The houses of the English resemble European palaces. The natives inhabit a distinct portion of the town, built in the Asiatic manner.

Madras is the capital of the British possessions in the South of India; and *Bombay*, of those on the East. *Bombay* is situate on a small barren island near the coast, and has extensive commerce. *Columbo* is the British capital of Ceylon. It resembles the cities of Europe in its appearance.

Goa is a populous city and territory, possessed by the Portuguese. **Pondicherry**, on the coast of Coromandel, belongs to the French.

Benares is the most populous city of India, and celebrated as a holy city, and a seat of learning. Many of its houses are large and well-built, and it is crowded with persons from all parts of India, who come here to end their days. **Delhi**, the former capital of Hindoostan, is now much reduced. **Poonah** is the modern capital of the empire of the Mahrattas.

Ummerapoora is the residence of the emperor of Burmah. **Siam** is an extensive city, intersected by canals. **Kesho**, the capital of Tonkin, has some wide streets and good buildings. **Faifo** is a seaport of Cochin China, sometimes visited by Europeans. **Malacca** contains many good houses of stone, and is distinguished for a college founded by an English Missionary Society.

China abounds in large cities; but we know only the names of most of them. **Pekin** is probably the most extensive and populous city in the world. It is the residence of the emperor of China.

Nankin, the former residence of the emperor, is distinguished for its porcelain tower, and for the cotton cloth called nankeen. **Canton** is the principal port in China, and the only one at which Europeans and Americans are allowed to trade. All the cities known in China are very uniform in their appearance and mode of building, and remarkable for their crowded population, and for the exercise of various trades in their streets. **Chenyang**, the capital of the Mandshur Tartars, is said to be an extensive city. **Cashgar** is the residence of the Chinese governor of Tartary. **Lassa** is the residence of the Grand Lama of Thibet, and is crowded with worshippers from all parts of Asia.

Jeddo is one of the most populous cities on the globe. It is the residence of the emperor of Japan, whose palace is a city of itself. **Meaco** is the centre of religion and learning in the empire. **Nangasaki** is the only place in Japan at which Europeans are allowed to trade.

Manilla, **Macassar**, and **Amboyna** are the chief places of European trade, in the islands to which they belong. **Acheen**, the capital of the most celebrated native kingdom of Sumatra, is formed of houses built on posts. **Batavia** was formerly a place of very extensive trade. Its climate is almost fatal to strangers,

and its population is now much diminished. *Borneo*, the capital of the island of Borneo, consists of about 3,000 floating houses. *Sydney*, the chief settlement of New Holland, is a large town, with one of the finest harbours in the world.

AFRICA.

277. Africa is the third quarter of the globe in point of size. The population is variously estimated from 30 to 150 millions; but nothing is known with certainty concerning any parts except the coasts.

278. In the interior of Africa, the heat of the climate is not moderated by mountains, lakes, or rivers, and extensive tracts are occupied by deserts of sand.

279. The climate, productions, and character of the people, are such as are generally found in the Torrid Zone; those parts which are well watered being very fruitful.

280.

The northern countries of Africa were anciently among the most enlightened in the world, and still have written languages.

These are now among the lowest of half-civilized nations. The rest of Africa has always been in a savage or barbarous state.

Most of the Africans, like other barbarous nations, make slaves of those whom they take in war, and many have been sold to Europeans and Americans. In the northern parts of Africa there is also a considerable trade in white slaves, usually Georgians, Circassians, or Turks.

The Mahometan religion extends over all the North of Africa.

The Abyssinians, and some of the people of Egypt, profess a corrupt Christianity, but not deserving the name.

All the other nations of Africa are sunk in superstition and vice; and some nations have been found who do not believe in any God.

Questions. (I.)—On which continent, and what part of it, does Africa lie? (*See map of the world.*) How is it bounded on the N., E., S., and W.? What isthmus unites it to Asia? What does Africa resemble in shape? What is its comparative size?

What is the supposed population? In what zones does it lie? What can you say of the climate generally? What is the state of a large part of it? What can you say of the productions and people?

(II.) What was the ancient state of Northern Africa? What is it now, and what is that of other parts? What barbarous practice have they? What nations profess to be Christians? What is the moral state of the rest?

Questions on the chart of the World.

Civilization. (I.)—Are there any civilized countries in Africa? What countries are half-civilized? What are barbarous? What is the state of the rest?

Government. (II.)—What is the government of Morocco? What of the other northern countries? What is that of Soudan? What of the other countries in the middle of Africa? What of the southern countries? What Christian colony is on the South, and to whom does it belong?

Religion. (I.)—What is the religion of the northern countries of Africa, and of Nubia? What country in the middle has a corrupt Christianity? What is the religion of Soudan and Senegambia? What is that of Guinea? What of the southern countries? What of the eastern coast?

Population. (II.)—What country is that the population of which is the largest known in Africa?

The population of most of these countries is unknown, as well as that of many of their cities.

What countries have four millions of inhabitants? What one has two millions and a half of inhabitants? What is probably the population of Tripoli? Who are the inhabitants of Barbary? What people do you find in Soudan? What in Guinea, Lower Guinea, and Zanguebar? What in South Africa? Who inhabit the Colony of the Cape?

Questions on the map of Africa.

Capes. (I.)—What is the most northern cape of Africa? What is the southern cape? What are the eastern and western capes? What capes are on the western coast above Cape Palmas? What capes on the coast of Guinea? What capes between this and the Cape of Good Hope? What capes on the eastern coast?

Seas, Gulfs, &c. (I.)—What sea lies on the East? What on

the North? What straits enter the Red Sea? What channel is on the East? What bays are on the W. coast of Africa? What on the eastern? What gulf is near the Equator? What one on the North, and where?

Mountains and Deserts. (I.)—Where are the Mountains of the Moon? What mountains are in the western part of Africa? What in the northern? What two chains of mountains are between the Equator and the Tropic of Capricorn? What chain is in South Africa? What are the principal deserts known, and where are they?

Boundaries and Capitals. (I.)—What countries lie North of the Tropic of Cancer? What are the boundaries and capitals of each, beginning with the states of Barbary on the West? What are the three great divisions of the country between the Tropic and the Mountains of the Moon? What are the boundaries and capitals of each portion? What are some of the smaller divisions of Soudan? What are the great divisions of Africa between the Mountains of the Moon, or Jibbel Kumra, and the southern tropic.

So little is known of Africa, that it is impossible to obtain any accurate accounts of boundaries in most parts of it. Those which are chiefly formed by geographers are marked by small dots; and those more certain, by larger dots, with intervening lines, as in Barbary.

What are the countries and chief cities in Lower Guinea? What are some of the countries and chief cities on the coast of Zanguebar? What countries are North of the Equator on this coast? What name is given to the unknown interior of this part of Africa? What are the boundaries and capital of the Colony of the Cape?

Lakes and Rivers. (I.)—Where is Lake Maravi? Lake Dembeah? Lake Dibbie? Lake Tsad? Which are the two largest rivers of Africa? What three branches form the Nile? Where do they rise? Where does the Niger rise? Through what country does it pass, as it flows East?

The Niger is believed by some to empty itself into the Nile; by others on the coast of Guinea; and by others into an inland sea or lake; but nothing is known certainly on this subject.

Where is the Senegal? Which way from it is the Gambia? What two rivers are South of the Kong Mountains? Where is the

River Zaire? Where is the Bembaroque? What principal rivers are in South Africa? In what mountains do they rise? Which is the largest? What is the chief river known on the East? What one in the South part of Abyssinia?

II. Describe each of the rivers mentioned, the source, course, and place of emptying itself.

Islands (I.)—What three groups of islands do you find North of Cape Blanco? What cluster off Cape Verd? What small islands on the coast, above Cape Verd? What below? What two islands South from Cape Palmas? What in the Gulf of Guinea? What large one on the eastern coast? What two small ones East of this? What North of it? What in the Channel of Mozambique? What Arabian island is off Cape Guardafui?

Latitudes. (II.)—In what latitude do the northern portions of Africa lie? What is that of the Mountains of the Moon? Where does the Equator pass? In what zone does the middle portion or larger part of Africa lie? What is the latitude of South Africa? With what countries of Europe does it compare in latitude? What parts of America are in the latitude of Barbary? Of Senegambia? Of Guinea? What parts of Africa are in the latitude of the West Indies? Of New Grenada? Peru? Chili? Lima? Rio Janeiro? Atacama? Valparaiso?

Longitudes. (II.)—What is the longitude of St. Helena from London? What is the difference of time? What is that of Egypt? (*See chart of the world.*) What is the difference of time between London and the Cape of Good Hope? Between London and Madagascar?

NORTHERN AFRICA.

281. Northern Africa may be considered as embracing the regions North of the Tropic of Cancer.

The natural heat of a tropical climate is here made more oppressive by the neighbouring deserts.

The principal countries of Northern Africa are the Barbary States and Egypt.

BARBARY STATES.

Morocco—Algiers—Tunis—Tripoli.*Algiers.*

282. Barbary is a hot, fruitful country, but miserably cultivated, extending from Cape Nun almost to Egypt. It includes a number of independent States.

It contains several large cities, which are usually built on a rising ground, presenting an appearance like that of Algiers in the engraving.

The people are proud, indolent, cruel, and vicious, gaining most of their wealth by piracy.

The empire of Morocco includes the former kingdoms of Tafilet and Fez. Barca and Augela are subject to Tripoli.

Questions on the map. (I.)—How is Barbary bounded? Name the states of Barbary, and their capitals. Which is the most eastern? and which the most western? What country in Europe is North of Morocco? What one North of Tripoli? What chain of mountains is there in Barbary?

(II.) What place in Morocco is on the Straits of Gibraltar? What seaports are on the Atlantic? Which is the largest? What two cities are in the interior? Where is the Spanish fortress of Ceuta? (*See map of Europe.*) What European settlement of

the Spanish is in Algiers? What other city is there beside the capital? In what direction from Algiers is Tunis? In what direction is Tripoli? Where is Derna? Where is the Great Desert? What mines are found in it? What name is given to the coast West of the Desert?

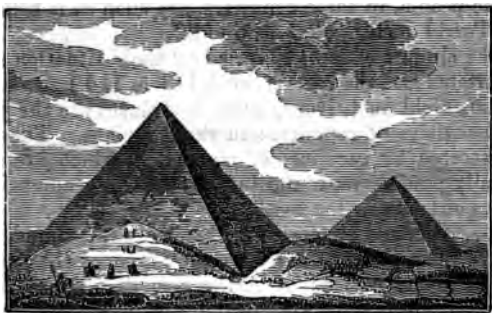
FEZZAN.

283. Fezzan is a large fertile spot or oasis, in the midst of sandy deserts, intensely hot in the summer. It is chiefly important as a centre of trade for the caravans which cross the deserts.

The people are ignorant, rude, and vicious. They are tributary to Tripoli.

Questions on the map. (1.)—What country is East of the Desert? What is its chief town? What country lies between Fezzan and Egypt? What places are between Barca and Egypt?

EGYPT.



The Great Pyramids.

284. Egypt is celebrated for the wonderful pyramids, near Cairo, and other works of the ancient inhabitants.

It is a hot, but very fruitful country, which is watered by the overflowing of the Nile, instead of rain.

There are some professed Christians in Egypt, but the people are generally in the lowest state of ignorance and oppression.

Questions on the map. (I.)—How is Egypt bounded? What is the capital, and on what river? What is the principal seaport? What two other seaports are there, and where?

(II.) What considerable place is above Cairo on the Nile? What three places are above Siout? What seaport is West of the river? What place is at the head of the Red Sea? What country of Asia is North of Egypt?

MIDDLE REGIONS OF AFRICA.

*Senegambia—Guinea—Lower Guinea—Zanguebar—
Nubia—Abyssinia—Soudan.*

285. Most of the countries of Africa lie between the two Tropics, and the climate, productions, and character of the people, in these countries, are such as is usual in the Torrid Zone. (*See* § 86 to 92.)

The climate of some is varied by their situation as to mountains and the sea. (*See* § 113 to 114.)

286. Gold dust, ivory, gums, and slaves are the principal articles of commerce in these regions. They are transported by caravans of merchants, which are continually passing from the interior to the seaports, and places of trade on the coast.

287. Rice and cotton are produced in great abundance, and furnish most of the food and clothing of the people.

288. Some nations of Africa are distinguished for native mildness and hospitality, but many are treacherous and cruel; and indolence is a universal characteristic.

It is said, that in some parts thousands of square miles of fertile and well peopled countries have been desolated by wars, made to supply Europeans and Americans with slaves.

289. The middle regions of Africa may be divided

into Eastern and Western Africa, on the coasts ; and Central Africa in the interior.

Questions. (I.)—Where do most of the countries of Africa lie ? What can you say generally of their climate, productions, and people ? What chain of mountains probably passes through the middle regions of Africa, from East to West ? (*See map.*) What great divisions of middle Africa lie North of these mountains, and what South ? How is the state of particular countries varied ? What are the chief articles of commerce ? What the most important productions ? What can you say of the nations of this region ? What effect has the slave trade ? How may these regions of Africa be divided ? What countries are on the eastern coast of Africa ? What on the western ? What in Central Africa ?

WESTERN AFRICA.

Senegambia—Upper Guinea—Lower Guinea.



Sacrifice of victims in Dahomey.

290. The nations of Western Africa are chiefly pagans, and some of them excessively cruel. In Dahomey there is an annual festival, on which a great number of victims are sacrificed, and their skulls are used to pave and adorn the palace of the king.

UPPER GUINEA.

291. Upper Guinea is a hot, but fertile country. It is divided into a number of barbarous kingdoms, of which Ashantee is the most powerful and warlike.

Many of these nations are distinguished for boldness and ferocity, and some for their skill in arts.

Coomassie, the capital of Ashantee, and some other places, are said to be large cities.

Questions on the map. (I.)—What are the principal kingdoms in Upper Guinea, and what are their capitals? What is that of Ashantee? What two European settlements are on the coast, and where? What names are given to different parts of this coast? Where is the English colony of Sierra Leone? What missionary station near it? What island South of it? Where is Teemboo? Where is the American colony of Liberia?

SENEGAMBIA.

292. This country is inhabited by tribes of Negroes, called Foulahs and Jaloffs, and is sometimes considered as a part of Guinea, or of Soudan.

It is fertile, but intensely hot. Many Europeans trade here, to obtain gold, ivory, gums, and slaves.

The coast between Senegambia and Morocco is the resort of tribes who live a wandering life, plundering and treating cruelly all who land or are shipwrecked on it.

Questions on the map. (I.)—What rivers pass through Senegambia? What seaport and place of trade is at the North? What towns? What European settlement? What name is given to the coast between Senegambia and Morocco?

LOWER GUINEA.

293. Lower Guinea is a hot and fertile country, but very unhealthy for Europeans. It is divided into several kingdoms, of which Congo is the principal.

The Portuguese have settlements on this coast, and have been most active in carrying on the slave trade, of which it is now the principal seat.

The king of Congo and many of his people profess to be Catholics, but Paganism is the common religion.

Questions on the map. (1.)—What is the principal kingdom of Lower Guinea? What is the capital? What kingdom is North of it? What is its capital? What name is given to this coast? Where is Angola? What place is in it? Where is Benguela, and what is its capital? Where is Angoy? What mountains are in Lower Guinea? Where is the River Zaire, and what is its size? What islands are there on the coast? Where is the Bembaroque? What country is between this and South Africa?

EASTERN AFRICA.

COAST OF ZANGUEBAR.



Conveyances of the rich on the Eastern Coast.

294. The rich Negroes in Zanguebar are carried about by slaves, in a kind of hammock, or in chairs.

The coast of Zanguebar includes a number of kingdoms, between the Equator and the Tropic of Capricorn. The Portuguese traders formerly governed several of

these countries, and they are little known to other nations.

Questions on the map. (1.)—What mountains are West of Zanguebar? What lake? What is the chief river known? What European fort is on it? Mention some of the principal kingdoms and cities on this coast? What islands are there on this coast?

ADEL, AJAN, BERBERA, AND MAGADOXA.

295. These are countries on the eastern extremity of Africa, very little known to civilized nations. They abound in myrrh, incense, and gums, of which large quantities are exported.

Questions on the map. (1.)—Where do these countries lie, and in what latitude? What are some of the principal places? What river is on the North, and what straits are near it?

NUBIA.

296. Nubia is a parched, barren country, except on the banks of the Nile.

It is divided into a number of small kingdoms. The people are barbarous, ferocious, and ignorant; some wandering, and others settled in towns.

Travellers in the deserts of Nubia and other parts of Africa are in danger of being overwhelmed by clouds or pillars of sand, moving with the wind.

Questions on the map. (1.)—How is Nubia bounded? What is the capital, and where? What is the chief place of Dongola? What port is on the Red Sea? What celebrated resort of pilgrims is opposite to it in Asia? (*See 136. c.*)

ABYSSINIA.

*Mountains of Abyssinia.*

297. Abyssinia is a rough, mountainous country, but generally fertile, and well watered.

It is cooler than Nubia, but still hot and unhealthy in many parts.

The religion is a corrupt mixture of Judaism and Christianity.

The people are ignorant and brutal, always engaged in civil wars, and accustomed to eat raw flesh.

Questions on the map. (I.)—How is Abyssinia bounded? What is the capital? What branches of the Nile rise in it? What river is on the South? What lake? Where is Axum, the ancient capital? What place is near it? What is the principal seaport?

CENTRAL AFRICA.

SOUDAN, or NIGRITIA.



The King of Darfur receiving homage.

298. The king of Darfur, in Soudan, obliges all who come before him to fall on their faces, while a herald stands by him, constantly proclaiming that he is the greatest of monarchs.

Soudan, or Nigritia, is considered as extending from Nubia and Abyssinia to Senegambia, between the Tropic of Cancer and the Mountains of the Moon.

It is a hot region, but productive, except the Desert of Sahara.

It contains many powerful kingdoms, but little known. They are chiefly inhabited by Moors in the North, and Negroes in the other parts.

Questions on the map. (1.)—How is Nigritia bounded? What desert does it contain, and what mines are in it? What rivers? What mountains on the South? What kingdoms in the West? What are their capitals?

(II.) What powerful nation borders on the desert N. of Kashna and Houssa ? What kingdoms are E. of Houssa, and what places ? What N. of these ?

ETHIOPIA.

299. This name has been given to the interior of Africa, South of the Jibbel Kumra ; but its geography is unknown.

SOUTH AFRICA.



Hottentots and their Villages.

300. South Africa lies South of the Tropic of Capricorn, embracing the Colony of the Cape, and several independent nations, of whom the Hottentots are best known.

The other tribes of South Africa, North of the Colony, are often classed under the general name of Caffres.

The Hottentots build their villages in a circular form ; and oxen are used generally among them instead of horses.

301. The climate of South Africa is warm, but seldom oppressive ; the nights are cool, and great and sudden

GREENLAND.



Ice Islands, and the white bear.

320. The coast of Greenland is usually skirted by immense islands of ice. The white bear is often found floating upon them.

This cold, desolate region belongs to the Danes. It is valuable principally on account of the fisheries on the coast.

It is inhabited by about 20,000 Eskimoes, and 8,000 or 10,000 Norwegians, with some Moravian missionaries.

Questions. (I.)—In what direction is Greenland from London? What is the southern cape? What straits separate it from Labrador? What island and settlements are on the western coast?

ANTARCTIC, OR SOUTH POLAR REGIONS.

321. South of South America are the islands of South Georgia, Sandwich Land, and the newly disco-

vered South Shetland Isles. They are the only tracts of land known near the Antarctic Circle.

They present even a more barren, desolate appearance than the Arctic Regions; and would scarcely be habitable on account of the cold.

Questions. (1.)—Where are the Antarctic Regions, and what islands are included in them? In what latitudes? What are their appearance and climate?

AMERICA.

322. America, or the new continent, was first made known to Europeans by Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa, in 1492.

323. It is the second of the four quarters of the globe in size, but probably the least populous.

324. This continent is distinguished for its large rivers and lakes, and its lofty mountains, in which it generally surpasses the eastern continent.

Questions. (1.)—When was America discovered, and by whom? In what direction does it lie from the eastern continent? (*See the map.*) Between what oceans on the N. S. E. and W. does it lie? What are its size and population compared with those of the other quarters of the world? For what is it distinguished? What are the two great divisions of America? (*See the map.*) What isthmus connects the two portions? What islands lie between them?

NORTH AMERICA.

325. North America extends from 10° to 70° or 75° N. latitude.

The boundaries and geography of the northern parts are very imperfectly known; but it was discovered by captain Parry, that Greenland is separated from the continent.

326. Almost every variety of climate and productions is to be found in this extensive country.

The western coast has a mild climate, but the northern and eastern parts are much colder than the same latitudes in Europe.

327. The northern regions of North America, even as far South as latitude 50° , are barren, and desolate with frost.

328. The middle regions between 30° and 50° have snow during the winter; and the countries in the northern part of these regions have severe cold.

329. South of latitude 30° , snow is unknown, except in mountainous regions; and coffee, the sugar-cane, and other tropical plants, are found in abundance.

330. The northern and western portions of North America are inhabited almost entirely by Indians in a savage state. They are visited by Europeans, only to procure skins and furs.

The eastern parts, South of latitude 50° , were long since colonized and peopled from European nations; and few of the Indians remain.

331. The greater part of North America is occupied by the two republics of Mexico, and the United States. The northern part is occupied by Great Britain, and the Russian settlements on the North-west coast.

Questions. (I.)—What is the extent of N. America? How is it bounded? Are the northern parts well known? What can you say generally of the climate? What is the climate of the western, and what of the other parts? What lakes does it contain, and how do they compare with those of other parts of the world? (*See page 22, § 62.*) Describe the northern regions of North America. What can you say of the middle regions? What can you say of the southern parts? By whom are the northern and western parts inhabited? By whom were the eastern parts peopled? How is N. America divided?

Questions on the Chart of the World.

Civilization. (I.)—What parts of North America are civilized? What are enlightened? What parts are still in the savage state?

Government. (II.)—What government do you find among the Indians in the North and West? What is that of Canada and the British provinces? What is that of the United States? What of Mexico?

Religion. (II.)—What is the prevailing religion of the northern portion? What is that of the British provinces? of the United States? Of Mexico?

Population. (II.)—Who inhabit the northern portion of North America? How many inhabitants are there in the British provinces, and what are they? Describe the population of the United States. What is the population of Mexico, and of whom is it composed?

Questions on the map of North America.

(I.)—What is the most eastern point of North America? What is the most western? What isthmus unites it to South America? What straits have been found separating the continent from Greenland on the North? What on the East? What is the southern cape of Florida? Between what latitudes does North America lie?

Gulfs, Bays, and Straits. (I.)—What Gulf lies South of N. America? What two large bays are in the N. E.? What straits are on the northern boundary? What straits lead into Hudson's Bay? What bay is between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick? Where are Bhering's straits? What gulf and sounds are on the western coast?

Mountains. (I.)—What is the course of the Rocky Mountains? What is the course of the Allegany ridge? (*See map of the United States.*) What lofty mountains are on the N. W. coast?

Boundaries and Capitals. (I.)—How are the British territories bounded? Describe the chain of lakes which separates them from the United States. What is the capital of Lower Canada? How are the United States and their territory bounded? Where is the seat of general government? How far West do the United States proper extend? How is Mexico bounded? What is its capital? What are the boundaries of Guatemala? What is its capital?

Lakes. (I.)—What six lakes lie between the United States

and the British territories? Which is the largest, and which the smallest? What lake is next to the Lake of the Woods on the North-West? What others are beyond this in the same direction? Which is the most northern? What are the two principal lakes of Mexico and Guatemala? How many degrees is it from Lake Nicaragua to the Pacific Ocean? With what sea does this lake communicate?

Rivers. (I.)—What are the two principal rivers flowing from the Rocky Mountains into the Pacific Ocean? What two rivers empty themselves into the Arctic Ocean? Mention some of the rivers running into Hudson's Bay. What river runs from the great lakes into the Gulf of St. Lawrence? What two great rivers run into the Gulf of Mexico? What are the two principal rivers that flow into the Mississippi from the West? What large river from the East?

(II.) Describe the branches of the Columbia. Through what lake does Mackenzie's River pass? What lakes and branches supply Churchill River? What river runs from Lake Winnipeg to Hudson's Bay? What river flows from Lake St. Joseph into Hudson's Bay? Are there any rivers of importance in New Britain? What is the size of the two great rivers which flow into the Gulf of Mexico? Where does the Mississippi rise? Describe its branches. What branches has the Missouri, and on which side are they?

Islands. (I.)—What islands are there at the mouth of the St. Lawrence? What is the largest on the coast of the United States? What islands are there at some distance East of the United States? What islands lie between North and South America? Which is the largest? What are the three next in size?

(II.)—Describe the inhabitants, and their number, in Cuba—St. Domingo—Porto Rico—Jamaica—The Caribbean Islands. (*See chart of the world.*) What name is given to the most northern group of Islands? Mention some of the small islands called the Caribbean, lying East of Porto Rico. Which is the most southern and largest of these? What two islands are on the coast of South America, West of Tobago? What are the principal islands on the western coast?

Latitudes and Longitudes in N. America.—(II.) What

parts of North America are between 50° and 60° of North latitude? What parts between 40° and 50° ? What between 30° and 40° ? What is nearly the latitude of Quebec and Montreal? Of Washington? Of New Orleans? Of Mexico? Of the West-Indies? Find the longitude from London, of Philadelphia, New-Orleans, and Mexico. What is the difference of time, between these places and London? Is their time faster or slower? (*See the Chart of the World, and page 36.*)

RUSSIAN AMERICA.

332. The Russians possess a part of the North-West Coast of North America, and hold about 50,000 Indians in subjection.

The people of this region resemble those of Siberia, and probably came from Asia.

Questions.—(I.) What is the most western cape of N. America? What peninsula is South of it?

(II.) What sound and inlet are near Alaska? What mountains are on the coast, and of what height? Where is Portlock Harbour? What parts of Hudson's Bay and of Greenland are nearly in the same latitude? What parts of Europe are in this latitude? (*See the names on the borders of the map.*)

BRITISH AMERICA.

333. The British possessions in N. America may be divided into three portions; the North-West Territory, lying West of Hudson's Bay; New Britain, East of this bay; and the British Provinces, on the South-East.

They extend from the Atlantic Ocean to the Rocky Mountains, and from the northern boundary of the United States to the Arctic Ocean.

and have many of the improvements of civilized life. *Latakoo* is the largest native town yet known in South Africa, and contains 8000 or 10,000 inhabitants.

Tananarive is a large, well-built, inland town of Madagascar, and the capital of one of its principal kingdoms.

European settlements.—The French, Portuguese, and Spaniards, have a number of settlements on the coast of Africa for the purposes of trade, especially in slaves. *Mozambique* is the capital of the Portuguese settlements on the coast of Zanguebar, and *Loanda*, on the coast of Angola. The chief French settlements are at *Goree*. *Elmina* is a Dutch fort. These settlements are usually mere fortresses. The towns of Africa and its islands, possessed by Europeans, are built like those of Europe.

Cape Town is the only place of importance in the Colony of the Cape. Its streets are traversed by canals planted with trees. Two thirds of the inhabitants are blacks.

The towns in the colony of Sierra Leone, of which *Freetown* is the principal, are pleasant, and neatly built. Most of the inhabitants are Africans of various nations, taken from slave ships, and brought here to be instructed in religion and the arts of civilized life.

POLAR REGIONS.

ARCTIC, OR NORTH POLAR REGIONS.



Snow-huts in North Georgia.

316. Greenland and the neighbouring regions have usually been considered as belonging to North America ; but the channel of Barrow's Strait has been penetrated to 114° west longitude ; the sea has been seen at two places between this and Bhering's Straits, by Hearne, Franklin, and Mackenzie ; and it is probable there is no barrier but ice to interrupt the passage across.

It is proper therefore to consider the Arctic regions as a distinct division of the world.

317. They have not been fully explored ; but appear to comprise a considerable extent of land, of which North Georgia, Greenland, and the island of Spitzbergen, are the principal portions known.

318. The aspect of these regions is dreary and desolate in the extreme. The coasts only appear to be habitable ; and these present a surface of snow, varied with mountains of ice, during the greater part of the year. A scanty but beautiful vegetation appears for a short period in the summer. The interior is traversed by naked, barren mountains, covered with perpetual ice, and interspersed with vast glaciers.

319. The rivers are neither numerous nor large. The waters and torrents of the summer are chiefly converted into masses of ice during the winter ; and the inhabitants and travellers depend on melted snow for their drink. These dreary regions are but thinly inhabited either by men or animals.

Questions. (I.)—Do Greenland and the neighbouring regions belong to America ? What can you say of the Arctic Regions ? What is their aspect ? Have they rivers ? Mention some of the islands, bays, &c. (*See map of North America.*)

GREENLAND.

*Ice Islands, and the white bear.*

320. The coast of Greenland is usually skirted by immense islands of ice. The white bear is often found floating upon them.

This cold, desolate region belongs to the Danes. It is valuable principally on account of the fisheries on the coast.

It is inhabited by about 20,000 Eskimoes, and 8,000 or 10,000 Norwegians, with some Moravian missionaries.

Questions. (I.)—In what direction is Greenland from London? What is the southern cape? What straits separate it from Labrador? What island and settlements are on the western coast?

ANTARCTIC, OR SOUTH POLAR REGIONS.

321. South of South America are the islands of South Georgia, Sandwich Land, and the newly disco-

vered South Shetland Isles. They are the only tracts of land known near the Antarctic Circle.

They present even a more barren, desolate appearance than the Arctic Regions ; and would scarcely be habitable on account of the cold.

Questions. (1.)—Where are the Antarctic Regions, and what islands are included in them ? In what latitudes ? What are their appearance and climate ?

AMERICA.

322. America, or the new continent, was first made known to Europeans by Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa, in 1492.

323. It is the second of the four quarters of the globe in size, but probably the least populous.

324. This continent is distinguished for its large rivers and lakes, and its lofty mountains, in which it generally surpasses the eastern continent.

Questions. (1.)—When was America discovered, and by whom ? In what direction does it lie from the eastern continent ? (*See the map.*) Between what oceans on the N. S. E. and W. does it lie ? What are its size and population compared with those of the other quarters of the world ? For what is it distinguished ? What are the two great divisions of America ? (*See the map.*) What isthmus connects the two portions ? What islands lie between them ?

NORTH AMERICA.

325. North America extends from 10° to 70° or 75° N. latitude.

The boundaries and geography of the northern parts are very imperfectly known ; but it was discovered by captain Parry, that Greenland is separated from the continent.

326. Almost every variety of climate and productions is to be found in this extensive country.

The western coast has a mild climate, but the northern and eastern parts are much colder than the same latitudes in Europe.

327. The northern regions of North America, even as far South as latitude 50° , are barren, and desolate with frost.

328. The middle regions between 30° and 50° have snow during the winter; and the countries in the northern part of these regions have severe cold.

329. South of latitude 30° , snow is unknown, except in mountainous regions; and coffee, the sugar-cane, and other tropical plants, are found in abundance.

330. The northern and western portions of North America are inhabited almost entirely by Indians in a savage state. They are visited by Europeans, only to procure skins and furs.

The eastern parts, South of latitude 50° , were long since colonized and peopled from European nations; and few of the Indians remain.

331. The greater part of North America is occupied by the two republics of Mexico, and the United States. The northern part is occupied by Great Britain, and the Russian settlements on the North-west coast.

Questions. (I.)—What is the extent of N. America? How is it bounded? Are the northern parts well known? What can you say generally of the climate? What is the climate of the western, and what of the other parts? What lakes does it contain, and how do they compare with those of other parts of the world? (*See page 22, § 62.*) Describe the northern regions of North America. What can you say of the middle regions? What can you say of the southern parts? By whom are the northern and western parts inhabited? By whom were the eastern parts peopled? How is N. America divided?

Questions on the Chart of the World.

Civilization. (I.)—What parts of North America are civilized? What are enlightened? What parts are still in the savage state?

Government. (II.)—What government do you find among the Indians in the North and West? What is that of Canada and the British provinces? What is that of the United States? What of Mexico?

Religion. (II.)—What is the prevailing religion of the northern portion? What is that of the British provinces? of the United States? Of Mexico?

Population. (II.)—Who inhabit the northern portion of North America? How many inhabitants are there in the British provinces, and what are they? Describe the population of the United States. What is the population of Mexico, and of whom is it composed?

Questions on the map of North America.

(I.)—What is the most eastern point of North America? What is the most western? What isthmus unites it to South America? What straits have been found separating the continent from Greenland on the North? What on the East? What is the southern cape of Florida? Between what latitudes does North America lie?

Gulfs, Bays, and Straits. (I.)—What Gulf lies South of N. America? What two large bays are in the N. E.? What straits are on the northern boundary? What straits lead into Hudson's Bay? What bay is between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick? Where are Bhering's straits? What gulf and sounds are on the western coast?

Mountains. (I.)—What is the course of the Rocky Mountains? What is the course of the Allegany ridge? (*See map of the United States.*) What lofty mountains are on the N. W. coast?

Boundaries and Capitals. (I.)—How are the British territories bounded? Describe the chain of lakes which separates them from the United States. What is the capital of Lower Canada? How are the United States and their territory bounded? Where is the seat of general government? How far West do the United States proper extend? How is Mexico bounded? What is its capital? What are the boundaries of Guatemala? What is its capital?

Lakes. (I.)—What six lakes lie between the United States

NORTH-WEST BRITISH TERRITORY.



Indians carrying their canoes.

334. The North-West British Territory is a frozen, barren, inhospitable region, lying North of latitude 50°.

The animals of this territory furnish great quantities of furs. These are conveyed by the Indians and traders in canoes, so light, that they carry them from one stream to another.

It is inhabited by the Esquimaux Indians, on the coast, and the Knistenoës and Chipewayans, in the interior, with only a few trading settlements of whites.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How are the British possessions bounded? Describe the southern boundary. What bay do they include?

(II.) What divisions are made around Hudson's Bay? What large lakes are there? What are the chief rivers running North? What rivers run into Hudson's Bay? What articles of commerce are furnished by the N. W. British territory? What fort and trading houses are on Hudson's Bay? Where is the most northern, and where is the most western trading house? What can you say of this region? How is it inhabited?

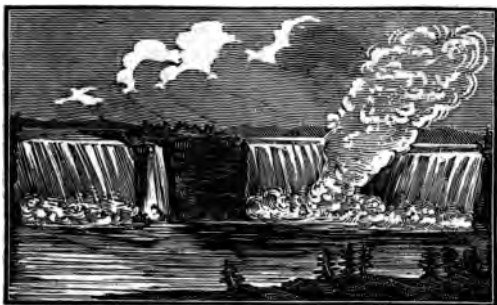
NEW BRITAIN.

335. New Britain is colder than the North-Western Territory. It is inhabited by a few Indians, some of whom have been taught and civilized by European missionaries.

Questions on the map.—(I.) Where is New Britain? What Indians are found on the coast, and what in the interior? What missionary station is on the Labrador coast? (*Two others have been established in Labrador.*) What provinces lie S. of it?

BRITISH PROVINCES.

*Upper Canada—Lower Canada—New Brunswick—
Nova Scotia—Newfoundland—Prince Edward's
Island.*



Falls of Niagara.

336. The cataract of Niagara, in Upper Canada, is probably the grandest in the world. The stream is three quarters of a mile wide, divided by an island in the middle. It falls 150 feet, and the roar may be heard 15 miles.

The climate of Lower Canada is severely cold; that of Upper Canada, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia, is more mild. All these are productive and flourishing provinces.

The French inhabitants, who retain their own language, are the most numerous in Lower Canada. They are industrious, but ignorant and superstitious. The British and Americans, especially in Upper Canada, have a better character and more information.

337. Newfoundland, Cape Breton, and Prince Edward's Island, are cold and barren. They are chiefly inhabited and resorted to on account of the fisheries near them ; and the inhabitants are rude and uneducated.

Questions.—(1.) How are the British Provinces divided ? How are they bounded ? What great natural curiosity do they contain ? Where is Niagara, and what lake flows over these falls ? (*See map of the United States.*) What is the climate of Canada, and the other provinces on the continent ? What can you say of the people ? What can you say of the islands, and their inhabitants ?

Questions on the map.—(1.) Which is the most eastern British Province ? How is it bounded ? What is the chief settlement ? Where are Cape Breton, and Prince Edward's or St. John's island ? What town is in Cape Breton ? What other islands are in the Gulf of St. Lawrence ? What one on the coast of Nova Scotia ? How is Nova Scotia bounded ? What is the capital ? What other principal places are there ? (*See map of the United States.*) What cape is at the South ? What are the boundaries of Lower Canada and of Upper Canada ? What river divides them in part ? What is the capital, and what are the other principal places of Lower Canada ? (*See map of the United States.*) What of Upper Canada ? How is New Brunswick bounded ? What are its principal places ? With what lakes does the St. Lawrence communicate ? What lake lies N. of Lake Huron ?

THE UNITED STATES.

338. The United States were formerly colonies, or provinces, of Great-Britain, but in 1776 they declared themselves independent.

339. There are now twenty-four separate states, united in one republic ; and four territorial governments, beside the great western Territory of Missouri.

These states occupy a space one third as large as Europe; and the territories an equal extent. Four of the states are each larger than England; eleven others exceed Scotland in size; and only four are as small as Wales; but the population of the whole is less than that of England alone.

340. This country was settled chiefly by emigrants from Great Britain, who speak the same language with ourselves, and have almost the same customs and laws.

341. It is the most powerful country on the new continent, and its population, commerce, and wealth have increased with wonderful rapidity.

342. The United States are usually spoken of in four divisions—the Eastern, Western, Middle, and Southern States.

The six Eastern States are those East of the Hudson.

The Western States are those which lie on the Mississippi and its branches.

The four Middle States are between the Eastern and Western States, as far South as Maryland.

The five Southern States are those South of these, lying on the Atlantic Ocean.

343.

a. The climate and soil are various in different parts of the United States; but almost all parts will produce in abundance wheat, rye, Indian corn, barley, and oats, with beans, pease, and other vegetables, and excellent fruits.

b. The northern parts, extending from 41° to 45° of north latitude, have severe winters and much snow.

This portion is best fitted for pasturage, and the coarser grains, rye, oats, and barley; but it also produces good wheat and fine fruits.

c. The middle regions, between 41° and 36° or $36\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ of latitude, have mild winters and little snow; and the heat of summer is longer continued and more constant than it is farther North.

This portion of the United States abounds in excellent grain and fine fruits; and between 40° and 36° is well suited for the cultivation of tobacco.

d. In the southern parts, between $36\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ and 30° , the climate is

warm. Snow is uncommon, and cotton, rice, olives, figs, pomegranates, and other fruits of warm climates flourish.

e. South of 30° , snow is unknown, and the productions of the Torrid Zone are found.

f. The inhabitants of the United States are Europeans, or their descendants, except the African slaves, principally found in the Southern States, and about 100,000 Indians, chiefly in the Western States.

g. The laws of the United States are made by a Congress, which consists of a House of Representatives, chosen every two years by the people of each state, according to their population; and of a Senate of two from each state, chosen for six years.

h. The laws are executed by the President, who is chosen by the votes of all the States every four years, assisted by the Secretary of State, and the Secretaries of War, of the Navy, and of the Treasury. The President and Senate appoint the inferior officers of government, and those of the army and navy.

i. Each of the states has an independent government, with distinct laws for itself, much like that of the United States, with a governor at the head. The territories are under the general government.

k. The value of goods imported into the United States from other countries, in one year, may be estimated at $15\frac{1}{2}$ millions sterling; and the exports, most of which are produced or manufactured in the United States, are of about the same value.

l. The value of articles manufactured in the United States in 1810 was from 35 to 45 millions sterling. The quantity and excellence of these articles has been rapidly increasing.

Questions.—(I.) To whom did the United States formerly belong? When did they become independent? How many states and how many territories are there? What people settled the United States? Is it a powerful country? What division is commonly made of the United States? Which are the Eastern States? The Western States? The Middle States? The Southern States?

By whom are the laws of the United States made? By whom are they executed? Who appoint the inferior officers of government? What are the governments of the particular States?

(II.) What can you say of the climate and productions of the United States? What is the climate between 41° and 45° North latitude? What are the chief productions? What states are in-

cluded in this region? What can you say of the middle regions? What are their productions? What is the latitude of Philadelphia?—Washington?—Lexington (Ken.)?—Norfolk (Vir.)? What states lie North of the parallel of 42 degrees? What states lie between 42° and 36° 30'? What states between 36 and 30°? What are their climate and productions? What states are bounded by the parallel of 42°? What by those of 36° 30' and 35°? What is the latitude of Newbern—of Charleston—of Savannah—of New-Orleans? What parts of the United States lie S. of 30°? What can you say of their climate? Who are the inhabitants of the United States? What is the value of the imports and exports of the United States? What is that of the manufactures?

EASTERN STATES, OR NEW ENGLAND.

*Maine—New Hampshire—Vermont—Massachusetts
—Connecticut—Rhode Island.*



The White Mountains.

344. This small and populous portion of the United States is more rugged and less fertile than the rest; but it abounds in good pasturage, corn, and rye, and produces much fine fruit. In the North are the White Mountains, the highest in the United States.

345. The northern parts are cold, dry, and healthy. The southern parts have a milder but more variable climate. The eastern coast is exposed to bleak, damp winds from the ocean.

346. *Maine* is the most recently settled, and a large part of it is still covered with forests. *New Hampshire* and *Vermont* are mountainous and thinly settled. *Massachusetts* is the most thickly settled state in the Union, and one of the first in commerce, manufactures, and wealth. *Connecticut* and *Rhode Island* are among the smallest states, but distinguished for their industry and manufactures.

347.

a. The Eastern States contain two of the first literary institutions in the United States—Harvard University at Cambridge, near Boston, and Yale College at New Haven; beside six other respectable colleges.

b. Almost all parts of New England are furnished with schools, supported by law, where every person may receive a common education, and with an unusual proportion of churches and ministers.

c. In consequence of these institutions, few are found in these states who cannot read and write, and knowledge is constantly and rapidly spread by the numerous books and newspapers which are published.

d. The people are generally distinguished for industry, enterprise, and intelligence, and for good education and good morals. Few, comparatively, suffer from poverty.

e. The inhabitants of the coast procure dried fish, whale oil, and spermaceti from their fisheries; and those of the interior obtain beef, pork, butter, and cheese from their farms, and lumber and potash from their forests. These articles are their chief exports.

f. The people of New England are principally clothed and supplied from their own productions and manufactures.

g. These states excel any others of equal extent in the Union in the tonnage of their ships; and also in the value of their manufactures, which are sent to other states in large quantities.

Questions.—(I.) From what has the wealth of New England been chiefly derived? What are its soil and chief productions? What is the face of the country? Describe the climate of each portion. What is remarkable in Maine? In New Hampshire and Vermont? In Massachusetts? In Connecticut and Rhode Island?

(II.) What colleges has New England? What other means of education and instruction? What is the general character of the people? What are the most important productions and exports of New England? Whence do the people obtain most of the supplies they need? What is the state of commerce and manufactures in New England?

Questions on the Map.—(I.) Which are the six Eastern States? What are the boundaries of Maine? Of New Hampshire? Of Vermont? Of Massachusetts? Of Connecticut? Of Rhode Island? Which is the smallest of these states? Which is the most eastern? Which one does not touch on the Ocean? Which is the longest river? What rivers are there in Maine? What islands, capes, and bays, are on the coast of these states?

Which is the largest city of the Eastern States? Mention the chief towns in each state, beginning with Maine.—What mountains are in New Hampshire? What in Vermont?

MIDDLE STATES.

New York—New Jersey—Pennsylvania—Delaware.



Aqueduct on the Erie Canal at Rochester.

348. The most important production of the Middle States is wheat. Large quantities of flour are exported from them to other parts of America and to Europe.

349. Except the northern part of New York, the Middle States have a milder climate and more fertile soil than the Eastern States.

350. They are generally healthy, except on the marshy borders of the lakes and rivers.

351. *New York* and *Pennsylvania* are two of the largest, most populous, and wealthy states in the Union. *New Jersey* is fertile and wealthy. Delaware is the smallest of the United States.

352. The Middle States have a number of important canals; and the Erie canal, constructed by the state of New York, is the longest artificial canal in the world. It has several fine aqueducts passing over rivers, of which one is represented in the engraving.

353.

a. These states contain the two chief medical institutions in the country,—one at Philadelphia, connected with a university, and another at New York. They have also two distinguished colleges,—at Princeton in New Jersey, and at Schenectady in New York, beside six others of respectability.

b. Public schools are not generally established in the Middle States, except in the State of New York.

c. The population of these states has been rapidly increasing, and great improvements have been made within twenty years past.

d. They were chiefly settled by emigrants from England, Holland, Germany, Ireland, and the Eastern States, and each preserves much of its own national character.

e. If the higher classes have more wealth and refinement than in the Eastern States, the lower classes are more rude and ignorant, and the poor more numerous.

f. These states surpass the other portions of the United States in wealth, and in the value of their manufactures.

g. By means of canals, some parts of which are already completed, the navigable rivers of these states will be connected with the lakes and the Mississippi.

Questions.—(1.) (See the map.) What is the chief pro-

duction of the Middle States? What is their climate? Are they healthy? Describe New York and Pennsylvania. What can you say of New Jersey? How large is Delaware? What great canal is in these states?

(II.) What literary institutions are in these states? What provision is made for the education of the poor? What can you say of the improvement of these states? How were these states settled? What can you say of the character of the people? How are the Middle States, compared with the other divisions of the Union, as to manufactures and wealth? What advantages can they derive from canals?

Questions on the map. (I.) Which are the four Middle States? Which are the two largest? Which touch on the lakes? Which lie upon the Ocean? Which is the smallest? What are the boundaries of New York? Of Pennsylvania? Of New Jersey? Of Delaware? What three rivers are the largest? What river rises in the western part of Pennsylvania? What mountains are in Pennsylvania?

(II.) Which are the two largest cities of these states? What are the chief towns of New York? Of Pennsylvania? Of New Jersey? Of Delaware? What canals are in New York, and what waters do they join? What are in New Jersey?

SOUTHERN STATES.

Maryland—Virginia—N. Carolina—S. Carolina—Georgia.



Rice.

Cotton.

Tobacco.

354. The Southern States extend from the boundaries of Pennsylvania and Delaware to those of Florida, all lying on the Atlantic.

355. The northern parts abound in wheat and Indian corn ; but rice, cotton, and tobacco are the most valuable productions of these states, and are important articles of commerce.

356. The country on the coast of the Southern States, from 100 to 200 miles in breadth, is generally low, sandy, and barren, except the portions on the bays and sounds, which are marshy.

357. The climate of the low country is very hot and unhealthy in the summer. The back parts are mountainous, and enjoy a better climate.

The winters are mild, and snow seldom falls in large quantities. The heat of summer is more oppressive than in the northern states, chiefly because it is more constant, and longer continued.

358. *Virginia* is the largest state in the Union. *Maryland* is very fertile in wheat and tobacco. *North* and *South Carolina* and *Georgia* derive great wealth from the raising of cotton and rice. Between *Virginia* and *Maryland* is the *District of Columbia*, lying on the *Potomac* river, which contains the city of *Washington*, the seat of government of the United States.

359.

a. These States have a flourishing medical school at *Baltimore*, and universities or colleges in each state, of which those of *Virginia* and *North Carolina* hold the highest rank.

b. The inhabitants of the Southern States usually live on large plantations, so far from each other, that there are few towns or villages, and of course few churches and common schools, compared with those of the Northern States. In consequence of this, the lower classes have little education.

c. Nearly one half the population consists of slaves, extremely ignorant and degraded, who perform almost all the labour.

d. The higher classes are hospitable and liberal, and many are well educated. Luxury and dissipation are too prevalent, but the state of morals and manners has been improving for some time past.

e. These states are more extensive than the Middle and Eastern States together, and exceed either of these divisions in the amount of their exports. The value of property, except slaves, was less than in the Middle States, in 1814.

Questions.—(I.) Which are the Southern States? How are they bounded? What are the chief productions? What is the face of the country and climate on the coast? What in the interior? What is the comparative temperature of these states? Describe Virginia—Maryland—the Carolinas—Georgia. Where is the district of Columbia?

(II.) What literary institutions are there in these states? Are the inhabitants of these states thickly settled? What is the character of the lower classes? What is the proportion of slaves here? What are some of the characteristics of the higher classes? What is the extent of the Southern States compared with the Eastern and Middle States; and what their exports and wealth?

Questions on the map. Which are the five Southern States between Pennsylvania and Florida? Which is the largest? Which is the most southern? What are the boundaries of Virginia? Of North Carolina? Of South Carolina? Of Georgia? What mountains pass through these states? What rivers are there in Virginia? What in North and South Carolina? What in Georgia?

What bay do you find on the coast? What sounds? What capes? What seaports? Which is the largest city? (*See Maryland.*) Mention the chief towns in Maryland. In Virginia. In North and South Carolina. In Georgia.

WESTERN STATES.

*Ohio—Indiana—Illinois—Kentucky—Tennessee—
Alabama—Mississippi—Louisiana—Missouri.*



Ancient Fortifications at Marietta, Ohio.

360. The Western States abound with the remains of fortifications and mounds, so ancient, that they are now covered with aged trees. It is not known when these fortifications were built, or by what nation.

361. These states lie entirely on the Mississippi and its branches, and are generally well watered and very fertile.

362. They have a milder climate than the states on the Atlantic Ocean, but generally resemble those in the same latitude in their productions.

363. Immense *prairies*, or plains covered only with grass, form a striking characteristic of the Western States, and the soil is uncommonly fertile.

364. The chief productions of the states North of Tennessee are wheat and Indian corn.

Horses, cattle, and swine, are bred in great numbers

in these states, and large quantities of provision are exported in boats down the Mississippi River.

365. In the southern parts, rice, cotton, and even sugar, are raised, chiefly by the labour of slaves.

366. *Ohio* is one of the most flourishing states in the Union. *Indiana* and *Illinois* are still very thinly settled. *Missouri* abounds in rich mines of lead. *Kentucky* produces hemp and tobacco in great quantities. *Tennessee*, *Mississippi*, and *Alabama* derive great wealth from their cotton plantations. *Louisiana* produces both cotton and sugar.

367.

a. Slavery is prohibited in the states North of the Ohio, and the people resemble those of the Northern and Middle States on the Atlantic.

b. The Western States were settled latest, and are not yet well supplied with churches and schools.

c. The people are brave, hardy, and industrious; but the lower classes have little education. Their manners are more rough, and their morals less pure, than in the Eastern States.

d. The Western States have several colleges, of which that of *Lexington* is the most flourishing. Each state has a portion of land set apart for the purposes of education.

Questions.—(I.) What do you find remarkable in the Western States? Where do these states lie, and what are they? Which states are West of the Mississippi? Which North of the Ohio, and what Atlantic states are in the same latitude? Which lie between the Ohio and the Gulf of Mexico, and what other states are in the same latitude? What can you say of their climate? What is there peculiar in the face of the country? What are the chief productions of the states N. of Tennessee? What are the productions of the more southern states? Describe some peculiarity of each state.

(II.) In what states is slavery prohibited? When were the Western States settled? What is the character of the people generally? What colleges are there in the Western States?

Questions on the map. Which is the largest river of the Western States? What other large rivers are there? What states

lie North of the Ohio River? What are the boundaries of Ohio? Of Indiana? Of Illinois? What state lies West of the river Mississippi, and what are its boundaries? What are the boundaries of the state which lies at the mouth of the Mississippi? What four states lie between the Gulf of Mexico and the Ohio River? How is Kentucky bounded? Tennessee? Mississippi? Alabama?

What rivers are there in the states North of the Ohio? What towns on them? What rivers and towns in Kentucky? In Tennessee? In Mississippi? In Alabama? In Louisiana? In Missouri? Which are the two largest cities of these states?

MISSOURI TERRITORY,

Or the Western Territory of the United States.



Indians catching Buffaloes.

368. This territory embraces the greater part of the United States' possessions West of the Mississippi. It is still a wilderness, consisting chiefly of immense plains.

It abounds in wild animals, and is inhabited only by Indians, and a few soldiers stationed at military posts.

Buffaloes are found in numerous and large herds, and are caught by the Indians, by driving them into enclosures, as represented in the engraving.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is the Missouri Territory bounded? What mountains divide it? What river flows East from the mountains?

(II.) What are its chief branches? What one flows West? What Indians are found here? Where is there a missionary station?

SPANISH NORTH AMERICA.

Mexico—Guatemala.

369. These countries were first settled by Spaniards, and were provinces of Spain. They are now independent republics.

370. This extensive region was formerly inhabited by a powerful people, almost as civilized as the Chinese. The natives were conquered and cruelly treated by the Spaniards, who still hold many in slavery.

The Spanish inhabitants are generally ignorant and corrupt, without the refinement of European manners.

MEXICO.



Pyramid of Cholula.

371. At Cholula, in Mexico, is a very large pyramid built of brick by the ancient inhabitants, with a temple

on the top, in which thousands of persons were probably sacrificed to the Sun.

372. Mexico has long been celebrated for its rich mines of gold and silver, which are chiefly in the southern part.

The interior is thinly inhabited, and is remarkable for immense herds of wild horses and cattle. The southern parts contain most of the population.

The lowlands on the coast are hot and unhealthy; but the middle is an elevated, temperate plain, from 6,000 to 8,000 feet above the level of the sea, with every variety of climate and productions, at different heights.

Some parts which are inhabited are so cold, that wheat will not grow; and the whole is crowned with mountains covered with perpetual snow.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Mexico bounded? What are the chief rivers? What gulfs, and what peninsulas do you find? What are the provinces? What is the climate of the coast, and what of other parts? What is the capital?

(II.) What are the chief seaports on the Pacific? What on the Gulf of Mexico? Which is the nearest port to Mexico? What two cities lie S. of Mexico? What volcano? What cities are between Mexico and the Tropic of Cancer? What are the principal N. of this line? What is the most northern town in the interior? What capes are on the Pacific? What islands off the coast? Which is the most northerly port, and what is its size? What places are on the Gulf of California? What island is in it?

GUATEMALA.

373. Guatemala is a warm, fertile, and populous country, between Mexico and the Isthmus of Darien.

Its coast furnishes great quantities of mahogany; and a British settlement has been established at Honduras to procure it. The interior is little known to foreigners.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Guatemala bounded? What is the capital?

(II.) What seaport is there besides? What one on the Gulf of

Amatique? Where are Ciudad Real and Vera Paz? Where is Chiapa, or Chiapa of the Indians? What lake is in the S. and with what sea does it communicate? What is the nearest port of South America situate on the Isthmus?

INDEPENDENT INDIANS OF NORTH AMERICA.

374. The whole of North America was formerly possessed by the Indians; but they have gradually been diminished by wars and new diseases, as the number of white people has increased.

375. Many tribes still remain in various parts of North America, which are really independent nations. They hold their lands, and are governed by their chiefs, according to their own laws.

376. Most of the Indians of North America are tall, well formed, active, intelligent, and distinguished for boldness and native eloquence.

377. The northern and north-eastern coasts are inhabited chiefly by the Esquimaux. They are dwarfish, dull, and filthy; but mild in their character, and more disposed to receive instruction than many other tribes.

378. The Knistenoës and Chipewayans inhabit the interior of the northern parts. The Knistenoës are the most intelligent, mild, and honest.

379. The Sioux, Pawnee, and Osage Indians, found on the Missouri and its branches, are the most robust and warlike tribes.

380. The Snake Indians of the Western Territory are mild and inoffensive in their character. This is also said of most of the tribes beyond the Rocky Mountains, called Flatheads, from the flatness of their skulls, produced by pressing the head in infancy.

381.

a. There are several powerful tribes in the Arkansaw Territory

and in Mexico. Some of them use horses, taken from the immense herds which are found wild.

b. Some Indian nations in Mexico have been partially civilized, and are now governed by Catholic priests. Others live in towns by themselves, with an Indian governor appointed by the Spaniards.

c. The most important tribes within the United States are those which are found between the Ohio and the Gulf of Mexico—the Cherokees, Choctaws, Chickasaws, and Creeks.

d. Some of these, especially the Cherokees, have learned the arts of civilized life; and some are found who are well educated, and possessed of large plantations and numerous slaves.

e. There are many Indians between the Ohio and the great lakes, who are chiefly Chipewayans.

f. The Iroquois, or Six Nations *, are principally settled in the western part of New York, with teachers and missionaries among them. Among these, the Oneida and Tuscarora Indians have regular churches and ministers.

g. Missionaries, teachers, and mechanics have also been sent among the Cherokees, Choctaws, and Osages, who have begun to instruct and civilize these tribes.

h. There are probably 100,000 Indians in the United States, and 300,000 in their territories.

Questions.—(I.) Who formerly possessed North America? Are there any Indian tribes remaining? What is their general appearance? What tribes are found on the northern parts of the continent upon the coast? What tribes in the interior? What tribes are found on the Missouri, and what can you say of them? Where are the Snake Indians found, and what is their character?

(II.) What do we know of the tribes South of the Missouri? What is the state of some nations in Mexico? What are the most important tribes within the United States? Find the situation of each on the map. What Indians do you find North of the Ohio? Where are the Iroquois settled? What has been done to improve other Indians in this country? How many are there probably in the United States and their territories?

* Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagoes, Senecas, Cayugas, and Tuscaroras.

WEST INDIA ISLANDS.

*A Field of Sugar Cane.*

382. The West Indies are a number of very fertile islands lying between North and South America.

383. One of their principal productions is the sugar cane. It is cultivated by slaves, who form more than half the population. They are treated with cruelty in many of the islands, and in others with kindness.

384. The climate is mild and delightful in the winter; but it is extremely hot, and in most islands dangerous to strangers, at other times.

385. The West Indies produce almost all the fine fruits and plants of the Torrid Zone in abundance. Coffee and sugar are the most valuable, which are exported in large quantities.

386. The rains in these islands are so violent as to deluge the country in a short time; and they are subject to dreadful hurricanes, which often destroy buildings and crops.

387. These islands may be divided into the Bahamas, the Greater Antilles, including the four larger islands, and the Caribbee Islands.

Questions.—(1.) Where are the West Indies? In what latitude do they lie? What production is abundant? What is their climate? To what evils are they subject? How may these islands be divided? Which is the largest island? (*See the map.*) Which is the 2d? the 3d? the 4th? Which is the most populous?

BAHAMA ISLES. (*British.*)

388. Cotton is the most important production of these islands.

Many of them, particularly Turk's Isles, abound in natural salt ponds, in which excellent salt is formed by the heat of the sun.

Questions on the map.—(1.) What is the population of the Bahamas? What is the chief island? What gulf is between them and Florida? What dangerous bank or shoal is near them?

GREATER ANTILLES.

389. Cuba and Porto Rico belong to the Spaniards.

Cuba is the largest, most fertile, and wealthy of these islands. It produces the finest tobacco known.

Porto Rico is less productive and important.

390. St. Domingo, now called Hayti, was taken from the French by their African slaves. They have since formed an independent government, and have begun to establish schools and churches, and to advance in knowledge and arts.

391. Jamaica is the third of the West India Islands in size, and has been rendered perhaps the most important by the industry and enterprise of the English, who possess it.

The general aspect of the island is very fine. The grand and lofty ridge of the Blue Mountains intersects it, and descends on each side into fertile plains. From the variety of elevation, it produces European as well as tropical plants.

Questions on the map.—(I.) Which is the largest of these islands? Which is the most eastern? Which belongs to the Spaniards? What can you say of Cuba?

(II.) Are there any mountains in Cuba? In what direction, and how far is it from Florida? What is the chief city? What city is on the south side? Which way is St. Domingo from Cuba? To whom does it belong, and what is it now called? What is the chief town? What other place is there? Where is Porto Rico? Where is Jamaica? What can you say of it? What is the principal place? What is the class and comparative population of each of these islands?

CARIBBEE ISLANDS.

392. Of these islands, St. Bartholomew's belongs to Sweden, St. Thomas and Santa Cruz to the Danes, Guadaloupe and Martinico to the French, and the remainder on the map, including Trinidad, to Great Britain.

393. Curazoa, on the coast of South America, with the neighbouring islands, belongs to the Dutch. These islands are sometimes called the Lesser Antilles.

Questions on the map.—(I.) In what direction are the Caribbee Islands from Porto Rico? Which is most northern? Which the most southern, and how is it situate? (*See map of South America.*)

(II.) Mention the comparative population of each.

BERMUDA ISLANDS. (*British.*)

394. These islands are usually spoken of among the West India Islands, although at some distance from most of them.

They have a warm, but a very fine climate, and are often resorted to for the recovery of health.

Questions on the map.—(I.) Where are the Bermuda Isles? What is their population?

395. TRAVELS ON THE MAP OF NORTH AMERICA.

Map of North America.—What course will you take from the eastern coast of the United States to Greenland? What countries and islands shall you pass, and to whom do they belong? What new objects shall you probably see on your voyage? (See 320.) What bay lies West of Greenland? What is the most northern passage from this bay towards the West which has been discovered? How far West has it been examined? In what directions from this place has the sea been seen? How many degrees westward is Icy Cape?

As it is probable the ice will not permit you to go farther, you can return and examine Hudson's Bay.

What straits lead into this bay? What country lies South of these straits? What can you say of the people? (377.) What forts and trading houses do you find on Hudson's Bay? What course will you take to reach the most western trading house on Peace River? How do you like the climate? (334.) What mountains are near you, and how high do they appear to be? What occupy the coast West of these mountains? What articles of commerce shall you find among the Indians? (334.) How do the traders convey their furs? What course must you take to reach Montreal by water? What language shall you find most common there? (336.)

Map of the United States and British Provinces.—What towns should you pass in going down to the mouth of the St Lawrence?

You will find the banks of this river fertile, and lined with houses, forming almost a continued village.

Through what river can you pass into Lake Champlain? What communication is there between this lake and the Hudson River? What states lie East of the Hudson? How can you pass from the Hudson to Lake Erie?

As the canals, which have been projected, are not yet completed it will be necessary to travel by land through the Atlantic states.

Begin at Portland, Maine, and describe the course through the seats of government of the states lying on the Atlantic, till you reach St. Augustine, and mention the states and towns through which you pass, and the rivers and bays you cross.

What states and what seaports do you pass on the coast, in returning from St. Augustine by sea, as far as New York; and what islands? What states, ports, and islands do you pass in going through Long Island Sound to Boston and Newfoundland?

If you wish to visit the western coast of America, you will be obliged to go round Cape Horn.

Describe the voyage, and mention the countries you will pass. (*See map of the world, and map of North America.*) What is the first country of North America you reach? Describe your course along the coast to Alaska. What great river, with an American settlement on it, do you find?

It is usual for ships that visit the North-West Coast to carry the furs they obtain to China, where they are very valuable. On their course they often stop at the Sandwich Islands for refreshment.

Describe the course of these ships to Canton. How can they go to the United States, moving still westward, so as to complete their voyage round the world? If you do not wish to take so long a voyage, at what port in Mexico can you land, nearest the capital? What do you find remarkable in Mexico? (*See 371, 372.*) What gulf and sea must you cross, in going to Trinidad? What course will you take to go to New Orleans, and stop at the principal islands of the West Indies as you pass?

Map of the United States.—What is the situation of New Orleans? What states and places shall you pass in going up the Mississippi and Ohio to Pittsburgh? What mountains must you cross in going from Pittsburgh to Philadelphia? What is the first, and what the last ridge? What is the direct course to Washington from Wheeling on the Ohio? In what direction from Washington is Philadelphia? New York? Boston? Quebec? Hudson's Bay? Missouri? Cincinnati? New Orleans? Charleston? Mexico? The West Indies? What places shall you find in passing up the Hudson River? What on the Delaware and the Potomac?

SOUTH AMERICA.

396. South America is a very fertile portion of the world, distinguished for the size and grandeur of its rivers, and the height and extent of its mountains.

397. It abounds in precious stones ; and its mines, with those of Mexico, furnish much more gold and silver than all other parts of the world. Its soil produces many medicinal and other valuable plants, which are not found in other countries.

398. Brazil and a part of Guiana are settled and governed by the Portuguese ; but most of South America by the Spaniards. They occupy the seacoast principally ; and the interior is still a wilderness, traversed only by Indians.

399. The northern and middle portions lie within the Torrid Zone, and the southern extend nearly to the Frigid.

400. The climates of South America are more temperate than those in the same latitudes on the Eastern Continent, on account of the number of mountains and rivers, and the neighbourhood of the ocean. (*See p. 30, § 112, 113.*)

401.

a. The Araucanians of Chili, and some other tribes of Indians in South America, are much more civilized than those of North America, and are equally brave and warlike.

b. Some tribes, who were taught the Catholic religion and the arts of civilization by the Jesuits, still remain independent.

c. The greater part of the population of South America consists of Indians, who are subject to the Spaniards, and almost like slaves in their character.

d. The middle classes of society are chiefly Mestizoes, or children of Spaniards who have intermarried with Indians.

e. They are naturally intelligent and sprightly. Some of them have become very learned men ; others are herdsmen, resembling savages in their character and habits.

f. The higher classes consist of European and American Spaniards and Portuguese, who are generally educated and wealthy, but dissolute in their morals.

g. The government of Spain formerly discouraged education and the circulation of books among the people of South America.

But all the provinces have now become independent countries ; new institutions have been founded, and information has been more extensively spread by books and newspapers.

h. There are universities at Caraccas, Santa Fe de Bogota, Quito, Lima, and Guamanga. A university has been recently established at Cordova, and a college at Buenos Ayres, with a state library of 20,000 volumes.

Questions.—(I.) In which hemisphere, and in what zones, is South America ? How is it bounded ? For what is it distinguished ? What are its most valuable productions ? How is it settled, and what can you say of the interior ? How are the climates of South America compared with others in the same latitude ? What reason can you discover on the map for this ?

(II.) What is the character of the Araucanians ? What is the state of the Indians instructed by the Jesuits ? Who form the greater part of the population of South America ? What can you say of the middle classes, and what is their character ? What can you say of those who have become herdsmen ? Who form the higher classes ? Did the government of Spain encourage learning in South America ? What alteration has taken place in the government, and the state of knowledge ? What universities are there ?

Questions on the Chart of the World.

Civilization.—(I.) What is the general state of civilization in South America ? What countries are savage ?

Government and Religion.—(II.) What is the religion of the savages in South America ? What of the civilized countries ? What countries have a republican government ? What is the government of Brazil ?

Population.—Which is the most populous country of South America ? What country has above two millions of inhabitants ? What countries have less than two millions ?

Questions on the Maps of South America and the World.

Capes, Bays, and Straits.—(I.) What is the southern cape of South America ? What is the most northern ? What are the most eastern and western capes ? Where is Cape North ? Where is Cape Antonio ? Santa Maria ? What bays are on the south-eastern

coast? What straits at the South? What are the principal capes and gulfs South of Peru? What North of this country?

Mountains.—(I.) What is the great chain of mountains in S. America? What course and what number of degrees do they run? What is their height? (47. c.) What are the principal peaks in New Granada and Chili? What mountains are there in Guiana?

Rivers.—(I.) What is the largest river of South America? Where does it rise? What are the principal branches on the North? What on the South? Where does the Beni empty itself? What is the second river of South America? Where is the river Orinoco?

(II.) Describe the Paraguay. What great branches form it, and which is the principal? What other branches has it, and where? What river West of it empties itself into a lake? What are the chief rivers South of it? What are the principal rivers on the eastern coast of Brazil? What is the third river in South America? Describe its course. What island lies at the mouth? Has it any communication with the Amazon? What two rivers in Guiana are most known? Where is the river Magdalena? Describe its size, course, and chief branch. What two rivers here are united by a canal? Are there any large rivers on the western coast?

Boundaries and Capitals.—(I.) What countries of S. America lie North of the Equator? What are the boundaries and capitals or chief towns of Colombia? Surinam? French Guiana? What three countries lie principally between the Equator and the Tropic of Capricorn? What are the boundaries and capitals of Brazil? Peru? Upper Peru?

Amazonia is that region claimed by the governments of Brazil and Peru, which is entirely inhabited by Indians, and has no fixed boundary.

What three countries lie principally South of the Tropic of Capricorn? What are the boundaries and capital of Chili? Of La Plata or Buenos Ayres?

Islands.—(I.) What islands are there on the northern coast of South America? What islands lie North of the mouth of the Orinoco? What one is at the mouth of the Amazon? What islands are off the coast of Brazil? On what island is Cape Horn? What islands are East of it? Where are the newly discovered islands, called the South Shetland Isles? (*See map of the World.*)

NORTHERN COUNTRIES OF SOUTH AMERICA. 173

Where is Juan Fernandez, the island of Robinson Crusoe? What islands lie North of it? What is the chief island near the coast of Chili?

Latitudes.—(II.) What are nearly the latitudes of the northern and middle countries of South America? What places do you find in latitude 10° north? What places under the Equator? What places do you find 12° South of the Equator? What islands are in about 20° S. latitude? What islands in Polynesia are in the same latitude? What islands and countries are in 20° North latitude? What places lie in 34° or 35° South latitude? What is the latitude of Cape Horn? What other land can you find in the same latitude?

Longitudes.—(II.) Between what longitudes does S. America lie? What parts of North America are in the same longitude with Brazil? What with Peru? What countries of S. America have noon at the same time with Philadelphia? (*See the Chart.*) What is the difference of time between Philadelphia and the eastern parts of Brazil? What is the difference of time between Lima and London?

NORTHERN COUNTRIES OF S. AMERICA. COLOMBIA.



Andes of Colombia.

402. Colombia is one of the largest and richest of the

republics of South America. It is crossed by the Andes, and contains some of the loftiest mountains and volcanoes in the world.

The western part, formerly called New Granada, is mountainous, and rich in mines. The eastern part, or Caraccas, is chiefly composed of extensive plains, and a large part of it is extremely fertile.

In consequence of its volcanoes, this country is extremely subject to earthquakes.

The climate is hot and unhealthy on the coasts, and in the low parts of the country; but many districts are so elevated, that they have perpetual spring in the midst of the Torrid Zone.

This country abounds in the valuable productions of hot climates; and the people are beginning to improve in knowledge and arts.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Colombia bounded? What rivers has it? What is the capital? In what latitude is Quito?

(II.) What is the mountain near which it stands? What other near, which is the highest in South America? What place is W. of the Andes? Where is Popayan? What ports are on the Isthmus of Darien? What ports on the northern coast? Where is Caraccas? What port is near it?

(III.) Where is Truxillo? Merida? St. Thomas? What other town is on the Orinoco? What island is at the mouth? What other island on the coast? What portion of Guiana is included in Colombia?

GUIANA.

403. Guiana is that part of South America which lies on the eastern coast, between the Orinoco and Amazon. It is divided among the Spaniards, Portuguese, French, Dutch, and English.

It is a very fertile country, but hot, moist, and unhealthy. It is chiefly inhabited by bold and warlike tribes of Indians, some of whom feed on human flesh.

The anaconda, a very large serpent like those of the

Asiatic islands, is found in Guiana, which crushes animals to death, and then devours them.

Questions on the map.—(I.) What great rivers enclose Guiana? How is it bounded? Among whom is it divided?

Surinam is Dutch Guiana, and Demarara English Guiana.

(II.) What river separates Demarara and Surinam? What other rivers are the principal? What places lie on the coast, and where?

MIDDLE COUNTRIES OF S. AMERICA.

PERU.



Travelling over the Mountains.

404. Peru is a mountainous country lying on both sides the Andes. Its commerce is chiefly carried on over these mountains, where the steep narrow paths can only be travelled by mules, and the *llama*, or Peruvian camel.

Lower Peru, which extends from the sea to the mountains, is very hot and unhealthy, and by no means fertile. Upper Peru, which lies among the mountains, has a fertile soil, and a delightful climate.

Like Colombia, this country abounds in volcanoes, and is subject to earthquakes.

It is the country from which the celebrated medicine called Peruvian bark was first obtained.

The inhabitants are intelligent, but not well educated in general.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Peru bounded? What mountains pass through it? What is the capital, and where?

(II.) What is the nearest seaport? Where is Cusco, the ancient Indian capital? What are the principal places beside this East of the mountains? What places near the sea, North of Lima?

UPPER PERU.

405. Upper Peru is an elevated mountainous and rugged country, surrounded by the Andes and their branches.

It is generally cold and barren; but some parts are hot and fertile. It contains some of the richest mines of gold and silver in the world.

The people resemble those of Peru.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Upper Peru bounded? What large rivers rise in it? What lake does it contain? What are the principal towns?

BRAZIL.



Slaves searching for Diamonds.

406. Brazil is one of the most extensive kingdoms,

and watered by one of the largest rivers in the world. The interior is still an immense forest.

It has numerous mines of gold, and of precious stones; and the greater part of the diamonds now sold are obtained here. They are found in the sands of rivers, and washed out by slaves, as represented in the engraving.

Brazil has a variety of climates, according to the latitude and elevation, but is generally healthy.

The soil is extremely fertile, and the productions embrace those of hot and temperate climates.

The white inhabitants, who live chiefly on the coast, are deficient in industry and information, and this fine country is less productive and wealthy than many which are naturally inferior.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Brazil bounded? What is its capital? What great river has it in the North?

(II.) What ports are there North of Rio Janeiro? What places S. W. of it? What mines, and mining towns North of Rio Janeiro? What others in the western part of Brazil? What islands off the coast?

SOUTHERN COUNTRIES.

LA PLATA, OR BUENOS AYRES.



Herdsmen of La Plata.

407. La Plata contains immense grassy plains, called pampas. These are frequented by herdsmen, with immense droves of cattle, almost wild, which they catch with a noose, when required.

La Plata is generally a level, fertile country, with a temperate climate upon the coast, but excessively hot in the plains of the interior.

It produces the vegetables both of warm and temperate climates in different portions ; but the cattle of the pampas furnish the most valuable articles of commerce.

Paraguay is an independent province remarkable for the *matte*, an herb used in place of tea.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is La Plata bounded ? What is the capital ? Where is Montevideo ?

(II.) What three places are there on the river Paraguay ? Where is Mendoza ? What two places are north of it ?

CHILI.



Bridges in Chili.

408. The people of Chili are obliged to pass their streams by means of ropes, because they are too rapid to allow the building of bridges like ours.

Chili is a mountainous, productive, and healthy

country resembling Switzerland. In different portions it has various climates, according to the latitude and elevation, and has the productions both of hot and cold countries.

The people are intelligent, hospitable, and very humane to their slaves, but little cultivated.

Questions on the map.—(I.) How is Chili bounded? What extensive desert is there on the North? What is the capital?

(II.) What is one of the remarkable peaks of the Andes in Chili? What place is near this mountain? What are the principal seaports? Where is Valparaiso? What island is near the southern part? What islands are off the coast?

INDEPENDENT INDIANS OF SOUTH AMERICA.

Patagonia—Amazonia.

409. The native tribes of South America are accustomed to gain their subsistence by cultivation; and in the Torrid Zone a small spot of ground is sufficient to supply the wants of a tribe. Hence they were always more numerous than the Indians of North America, and they have not been diminished or driven away, as the North American Indians have been by the cultivation and settlement of their hunting grounds.

410. The independent tribes occupy the southern projection of South America, usually called Patagonia; and the central regions, termed Amazonia.

411. PATAGONIA extends from the pampas of La Plata to Cape Horn. It has never been fully explored or described.

Its surface is varied by the Andes, which pass through it, and descends gradually to the level of the pampas on the North.

It has the climate and productions of Buenos Ayres in the northern parts; but the southern appear to have all the inclemency and sterility of the Frozen Regions.

412. Patagonia is inhabited by two principal nations

of Indians, each divided into several tribes. The *Puelches* occupy the Atlantic coast, and extend for some distance into the interior. The *Moluches* are in the western section, extending across the Andes to the Pacific Ocean.

Some of the tribes, especially those on the Straits of Magellan, are remarkable for their stature, and generally measure six feet and a half in height.

None of these Indians have been civilized. They have learned the use of horses from the Spaniards, and sometimes rob the caravans on the pampas. They exhibit a warlike and ferocious spirit.

413. The *Araucanians* of Chili are the most powerful and warlike of all the Indian nations in the southern part of the continent, resembling the North American Indians in their character, and particularly in their fondness for eloquence.

They are more intelligent and cultivated than any other tribe of natives. Their government seems to be administered as regularly as in civilized nations.

414. The *Abipones* are an independent nation residing on the banks of the River La Plata. They have a bold and warlike disposition; but they are much less cultivated and interesting than the Araucanians.

415. AMAZONIA is a convenient name for the vast wilderness, which forms the interior of Brazil, Peru, Guiana, and Colombia, lying on the Amazon and Orinoco Rivers.

It is nominally included in these governments, but is really possessed by numberless tribes of Indians, whose character is scarcely known, and whose territory is almost unexplored. The climate is very hot and the soil extremely fertile.

416. Some of the natives are very ferocious; and there are tribes bordering on the European settlements, who watch and hunt for the whites and Negroes, in order to feast upon their flesh. Others exhibit a mild, inoffensive character.

417. The *Otomacs*, and some other tribes on the Orinoco, are in the habit of swallowing balls of clay, to appease their hunger, when other food is scarce; and they always lay up a store of these for the season of floods, when they cannot procure fish.

418. The *Guaraunos* are a social, hospitable tribe, who inhabit the islands in the delta of the Orinoco, and act as pilots. During the floods, they lodge in dwellings suspended from the trees.

419. Guiana is chiefly occupied by the powerful and hostile nations of the *Caribbees* and *Arowauks*.

The *Caribbees* are distinguished for pride, independence, and ferocity of spirit, and are superior to most tribes around them, in arts and war.

The *Arowauks* are mild and gentle in their disposition, and have been continually subject to attack and oppression from the *Caribbees*.

Questions.—(1.) How do the native tribes of S. America subsist? Are they as numerous as those of N. America? What part of S. America do they occupy?

Describe Patagonia. What is its climate? What tribes inhabit it? Are any of them unusually tall? Are any civilized? Who are the *Araucanians*? What is their character? Describe the *Abipones*.

Where is Amazonia? Who possess it? What is the character of the natives here? Describe the *Otomacs*. The *Guaraunos*. Who occupy Guiana? Describe their character.

420. TRAVELS ON THE MAP OF S. AMERICA.

The greater part of South America is a wilderness; and the want of roads and bridges in the civilized parts renders travelling unsafe, even there.

What is the most direct course from the eastern coast of England to La Guira, the port of Caraccas? What islands do you pass? What ports and river shall you pass in going to Demarara? To whom does this settlement belong? (403.) What places, islands, and capes do you pass, in going from Demarara to Peruambuco? What do you pass in going from this place to Rio Janeiro? What do you find remarkable in Brazil? (406.)

You must be cautious in travelling in Brazil, or in Guiana. There are several tribes of Indians, who seek every opportunity of killing persons, in order to devour them.

If you be allowed by the governor to visit the mines of gold and diamonds, which is not likely, what course will you take? What towns shall you pass in descending the River Paraguay to Buenos Ayres? What do you find remarkable?

You must also be cautious in travelling here to avoid the Guachoes, or herdsmen. They would rob you, even of your clothes, without hesitation.

What public institutions do you find in La Plata, and what appears to be the state of the people? What course will you take by sea to Valparaiso, the chief port of Chili? What country and islands do you pass, and what can you say of them? What places are on the coast of Chili? Describe the situation of Chili? How do you like the Chilian bridges? Is the climate agreeable?

As the Desert of Atacama, between Chili and Peru, is almost impassable, it is best to proceed to Peru by sea.

Describe your course to Lima, and the ports you pass. How must you cross the mountains to visit Cusco? What can you say of this place? In what direction from Cusco, and how far, are the celebrated mines of Potosi?

If you be willing to encounter difficulties and dangers to gratify your curiosity, you may perhaps be able to go along the eastern side of the Andes to Quito.

What places shall you pass, and what river? What lofty mountains are now near you?

In this place you will often see clouds and storms below you, while you have clear sky above you, and enjoy constant spring; but you must flee from your house, if an earthquake should occur.

What course will you take to Panama, Porto Bello, and Carthagena? And now find the shortest way to London.

421. CITIES OF AMERICA.

America is much less distinguished for the number and size of its cities than Europe and Asia. There are none which belong to the first four classes of cities, and only five which are above the seventh class.

In the cities of the UNITED STATES the houses are generally built of brick. The streets are broader, and more neat, than

in most European cities; and are usually paved, and furnished with side walks for foot passengers. They are adorned with churches and other public buildings, which often have considerable beauty. Perhaps no cities in the world are more distinguished for the number of humane and charitable institutions.

The towns of the northern United States, especially of New England, are seldom closely built. The houses are generally of wood, separated by gardens and cultivated grounds; and the streets are usually shaded with trees. These circumstances give them peculiar beauty.

The towns of the Western States, and of the western parts of New York and Pennsylvania, are laid out more regularly, and the buildings are generally more elegant, than in the older towns of the Atlantic states.

In the Southern States the people are so much scattered, that there are few towns or villages, and only a small number of places of considerable size.

Most of the principal cities of the United States are seaports, and the largest are situate on islands or peninsulas. New York and New Orleans are on islands; Boston, Philadelphia, and Charleston, are on peninsulas.

The seats of government of the states are often very small towns, chosen only on account of their central situation.

WASHINGTON was laid out on an extensive and regular plan, as the seat of government for the United States. It is not yet closely built, and the clusters of houses, with extensive vacant spots, appear like a number of villages. The Capitol, for the meetings of Congress, and the President's house, are magnificent buildings.

New York is among the first commercial cities in the world. It is situate on a beautiful and spacious harbour, at the mouth of the River Hudson. The streets rise from the water, and are laid out with considerable regularity.

Philadelphia is the first city in the Union in manufactures. It is remarkable for the regularity and neatness of its streets, and for the beauty of its environs. Its inland trade is extensive, and its markets are said to be unrivalled.

Baltimore is situate on a bay connected with Chesapeake Bay. It has increased with rapidity, and is now the third city in the union.

Boston is the principal city of New England, in commerce,

population, and wealth. It is situate on an irregular peninsula, and the streets are narrow and crooked. The harbour is excellent, adorned with islands, and surrounded by a beautiful and highly cultivated country.

New Orleans, from its situation at the mouth of the Mississippi, is the centre of trade for the extensive country watered by this river and its branches. The ground on which it stands is lower than the river in many parts of the town, and extremely wet. The situation and climate render it very unhealthy in the warm season, especially to strangers.

Charleston is regularly built on a low peninsula between two rivers, which form a fine harbour. It is a place of considerable wealth and commerce, and is the largest city in the Southern States, except Baltimore.

Albany is a flourishing city, finely situate for trade, at the head of sloop-navigation on the River Hudson. Near this place the canals from Lake Champlain and Lake Erie unite with the Hudson.

Providence is the third commercial town in New England, distinguished for the numerous manufacturing establishments in its neighbourhood.

Richmond is the seat of trade for the interior of Virginia. It is situate on a beautiful declivity, on the banks of James River. *Norfolk* is the principal seaport of Virginia.

Cincinnati is the most populous place, except New Orleans, in the Western States, and is increasing with great rapidity in commerce and population.

In the BRITISH PROVINCES, *Quebec* is the principal seaport. The lower town, on the banks of the river, is the seat of trade; and the river is so broad and deep, that a large fleet may anchor near the town. The upper town is strongly fortified, standing on the top of a promontory above the former. *Montreal* is also an important place of trade, situate on an island in the River St. Lawrence. Both these cities are built of stone, in the ancient European style. *York* is the capital of Upper Canada.

Halifax, the capital of Nova Scotia, is a large and commodious port on Chebucto Bay, with an excellent naval yard. *Frederickstown*, the capital of N. Brunswick, was nearly destroyed by fire in 1825.

In SPANISH AMERICA, the cities are generally built on a regular plan, with broad, paved streets, furnished with side walks. Most

of them are supplied with water by aqueducts, and the public squares are often adorned with fountains, as in Spain.

The public buildings, especially churches, nunneries, and convents, are numerous and splendid. The private houses are seldom convenient or elegant. They are usually low, often only one story, and seldom exceeding two stories in height, on account of the earthquakes and hurricanes to which these cities are subject. Lima, Quito, and Caraccas, have been almost destroyed by earthquakes. In Lima, the houses are built of wood; in Popayan and Quito, of unburnt bricks; and in most of the other cities, of brick or stone. In the cities of the Torrid Zone, on account of the heat, the windows are usually furnished with lattices, blinds, or curtains, instead of glass.

A number of these cities are on such high ground, that they enjoy perpetual spring. Santa Fe de Bogota, Quito, and Popayan, are nearly two miles above the level of the sea; Mexico, Puebla, Durango, and several others, a mile and a half; and Caraccas, more than half a mile.

Mexico is the most populous city of America, and one of the finest in the world in its situation and appearance. It was the ancient capital of the Mexican Indians, and always distinguished for its splendour and wealth.

Caraccas is an important commercial city, situate on an elevated plain near the coast. It is separated from its seaport, La Guira, by a high chain of mountains.

Santa Fe de Bogota is a large, well built city, situate on a lofty plain, and surrounded by precipitous mountains. The falls of the river Funza are not far from it. (*See p. 21, 60. b.*)

Quito is only a few miles South of the Equator. It is built at the foot of the Volcano Pichincha, on a declivity so steep, that carriages cannot be used in many of the streets. It is traversed in some parts by deep chasms or crevices, over which the houses are built on arches.

Lima is one of the most wealthy and commercial cities of South America. It is distinguished for the magnificence of its public buildings and the rich ornaments of its churches.

Santiago is finely situate in a valley near the Andes. From this city, and also from Lima, an extensive commerce is carried on with La Plata, by means of mules travelling over the Andes.

Buenos Ayres is the chief city and the centre of trade of the

southern part of South America. The La Plata is here 30 miles wide, but the harbour is not safe, on account of the violent storms which are frequent.

PORTUGUESE AMERICA, or BRAZIL, is extremely deficient in cities and towns. A few only are found on the coast, at considerable distances, and without any roads from one to another. The only towns in the interior are those established for mining. The cities generally resemble those of Spanish America; but are not so pleasant or so well built.

Rio Janeiro has one of the finest harbours in the world. In population and importance it is probably the first city in South America; but in the comforts and improvements of civilization it is inferior to many others.

St. Salvador, or *Bahia*, is next to *Rio Janeiro* in commerce and population. It is situate on a point of land, and, like *Quebec*, is divided into an upper and lower town.

The towns of GUIANA are small, generally built of wood, in a neat and convenient manner. *Paramaribo* is regularly laid out, and its streets are shaded with orange, lemon, and tamarind trees, covered with perpetual verdure.

422. TRAVELS ON THE MAPS, AND THE CHART OF THE WORLD.

Perhaps you are tired of travels. One more tour round the world to observe its waters and coasts; and another to see the state of the inhabitants, and they will be ended.

Voyage on the Maps.

Where is Archangel? How will you go to it from London? (*See map of Europe.*) 1. Mention the straits, seas, gulfs, rivers, capes, islands, and ports you pass, in going by sea from Archangel, round the North Cape, to Tornea.

Describe the objects you pass on the following voyages along the coasts of Europe: 2. From Tornea to Petersburg, and by Dantzic to Amsterdam—3. From Amsterdam around the British Isles to Calais—4. From Calais to the Straits of Gibraltar, and Genoa—5. From Genoa to Trieste, and thence to Constantinople, Odessa, Azof, and Trebizond.

6. What straits, seas, &c., do you pass in going from Trebizond to Smyrna, Jaffa, Rosetta, and Cape Spartel? 7. From Cape Spartel to the Cape of Good Hope? 8. Thence to Suez.

Describe the voyage, 9. From Suez to Bushire—10. Thence to Ceylon and Calcutta—11. Thence to Canton by the Spice Islands—12. From Canton to Archangel. (*See map of Asia.*) What countries are in the interior of the eastern continent, without any seacoast?

13. What is your course from Archangel to the nearest land of North America? 14. Describe the voyage from Cape Farewell to Barrow's Straits and Melville Island. 15. The route thence to York Fort—16. Thence to Halifax and New Orleans.

Describe the voyage, 17. From New Orleans by Porto Bello to Trinidad—18. From Trinidad by the chief West India Islands to St. Augustine—19. From St. Augustine to Cape Horn—20. Thence to Bhering's Straits—21. From Bhering's Straits by the Sandwich and Society Islands to Port Jackson—22. Round New Guinea to the Cape of Good Hope and London.

Voyage on the Chart of the World.

What is the state of civilization, religion, government, and population of the countries you pass in going from Archangel to Petersburg? From Petersburg to Amsterdam?

What of those on your left hand, as you go from Amsterdam to Gibraltar and Constantinople? What of those on your left as you return to Cape Spartel?

Describe those you pass in going round Africa to Suez. From Suez to Calcutta. From Calcutta to Canton. From Canton to Archangel.

What is the state of the countries you pass in going from Archangel to Greenland, thence to Cape Horn and Bhering's Straits, and thence to the Sandwich and Society Isles, New-Holland, and the Cape of Good Hope?

What countries do you remember with most pleasure? What religion have you found most common, and what state of civilization with it? What state of civilization with the Mahometan religion? What is the religion of the civilized countries? How do they differ from others in their customs and religious rites? What government do you find most common?

What empire appears to be the most extensive in the world? Which is the largest and most populous quarter of the world? Which is the second, the third, the fourth in size? What is their order as to population? What is the most populous country in the world, and what the second? How are these compared with Europe, Africa, and America, in respect to population?

GENERAL VIEWS

Of the Regions, Climates, Animals, Vegetables, and Minerals of the Earth, and of the Arts, Commerce, Literature, and Customs of its Inhabitants.

REGIONS AND CLIMATES.

423. To give a more accurate view of climates and productions, the surface of the Earth between the Equator and each pole may be divided into eight different regions.

424. The *equatorial* or *torrid regions*, extending twenty degrees on each side of the Equator, are the hottest parts of the Torrid Zone. They are the only regions which produce the finest spices, and the most fragrant gums.

425. The opposite extremes of climate are the *icy regions*, which surround each of the poles as far as latitude 75° or 78° . They are destitute of all vegetation, and are probably covered with perpetual ice.

426. Between these opposite extremes, the climate gradually varies from the greatest heat to the greatest cold. This portion of the Earth may be divided into six principal regions; the *tropical* or *hot* region, the *warm*, the *temperate*, the *cold*, the *wintry*, and the *frozen*.

427. In consequence of the different situation of various countries, the degree of heat is not always proportioned to the distance from the Equator. (See § 112—113.) The boundaries of these different regions are marked on the general view of the climates and productions of the Earth. (See the *Atlas*.)

428. It will be observed, that the limits of these regions extend from eight to twelve degrees farther North

on the eastern continent than in America; and also, that they are much farther from the Equator on the western coast of each continent than on the eastern.

429. The *tropical* or *hot regions*, extending from latitude 20° as far as 37° in Europe, and 30° in America and Asia, will not produce the finest spices, but retain the characteristics of the Torrid Zone, except that the trees are stripped of their leaves for a few months in the northern parts. These regions terminate where snow begins upon the plains, and where the sugar-cane ceases to grow.

430. In the *warm regions*, which lie next to these, the winters are rather damp than cold, and vegetables grow through the greatest part of the year. They terminate where the olive ceases to grow.

431. In the *temperate regions*, we first meet with the regular succession of the four seasons of the year, and an equal proportion of cold and heat. They produce wheat and barley, the most nourishing kinds of grain, in perfection, and the most useful vegetables and fruits in abundance.

432. In the *cold regions*, the winters are long and severely cold, and wheat cannot be raised without difficulty; but the pastures are rich, and rye, oats, and barley can be cultivated.

In the *wintry regions*, wheat will not grow, and the other kinds of grain are cultivated with difficulty.

433. In the *frozen regions* the cold of winter is intense, and ice continues through the year. Vegetation is scanty, and chiefly confined to the south side of the hills; and cultivation is impracticable.

434. The animals and vegetables of the Earth are various in different regions, according to the degree of heat and moisture; and are so wonderfully adapted to their situation and climate, and the wants of the inhabit-

ants, that they furnish the strongest proof of the wisdom, power, and goodness of the Creator.

435. It should be remembered, that the islands and mountainous countries of the Earth have a climate materially different from the regions in which they lie, and do not always furnish the same animals and vegetables.

Questions.—How may the surface of the Earth be divided as to climates? Describe the equatorial regions. The icy regions. How does the climate vary between these? Is the heat always proportioned to the latitude? What is the difference between the limits of these regions on the two continents? Describe the tropical regions. The warm regions. The temperate. The cold. The wintry. The frozen. Mention the countries in each region. (*See the Atlas.*) How are animals and vegetables distributed? What countries differ from the regions in which they lie?

VEGETABLES.

436. It is estimated by Humboldt, the celebrated traveller, that the number of plants actually known amounts to 56,000, of which nearly one half are found in the Torrid Zone, and 17,000 are American plants.

437. The most important vegetables of the Earth are those used for the food of men and animals, including the various kinds of *grass, grain, fruit, and roots.*

438. *Flax, hemp, and cotton* are very important for clothing. Other plants are valuable as cordials, medicines, and dyes; and few are entirely useless.

439. Most vegetables flourish in the same regions in every part of the world. A few of the more delicate are almost confined to their native soil; as the tea to China, cinnamon to Ceylon, and the nutmeg, mace, and clove to the Spice Islands.

440. The *grasses* are universally diffused over the Earth, as far as the limits of the frozen regions; but the pastures are richest, and the verdure is most constant and beautiful, in the cold and temperate regions.

441. The hot countries between the temperate regions and the tropics are not refreshed by the great rains of the Torrid Zone, and the pastures are often scorched and brown for want of moisture. Even in the southern parts of France and Russia it is often necessary, to water the fields by artificial means.

442. In the Torrid Zone, *rice*, *maize*, and *millet*, are the chief kinds of *grain* used for food, and are very abundant. But the *bread fruit* of Polynesia, the *cassava* and *arrow root* of South America, the *sago tree* of India, and the *plantain*, are used as substitutes for grain in the countries where they are found.

443. In the warm and temperate regions, *wheat*, *maize*, and *barley* are the most common kinds of grain. In the cold regions, *wheat* will scarcely ripen; and in the wintry regions, *rye*, *oats*, and *barley* are cultivated entirely in its stead.

444. In the frozen regions grain will not grow, and the grasses cease almost entirely. Their place is supplied by various species of *lichen* and *moss*, which form a nourishing food for men and animals.

445. The most delicious *fruits*, such as the *pine-apple*, *banana*, *date*, *orange*, *lemon*, *citron*, and *cocoa-nut*, are found only in the equatorial and tropical regions.

446. The *fig*, *olive*, and *almond* are every where produced in the warm regions; and the *orange* and *lemon* extend into the southern parts.

447. The *grape* is found almost exclusively in the warm and temperate regions of Europe and Asia.

448. The *peach*, the *apple*, the *pear*, and many kinds of *nuts*, are most perfect in the temperate regions. But we find the *plum*, the *cherry*, the *currant*, the *gooseberry*, and various kinds of *berries*, in all parts of the temperate and cold regions; and even the frozen regions are provided with several species of *berries*.

449. All the regions of the Earth except the frozen

and icy, are provided with an abundance of the common *vegetables* and *roots*, so much used for food.

450. The *potato*, *cabbage*, *turnip*, *beet*, &c., are common throughout the temperate and cold regions. The *yam*, the *cassava*, and the *arrow root*, which resemble the potato, are confined to the Torrid Zone.

451. The *forests* of the frozen regions are chiefly composed of the *fir*, the *pine*, and other evergreens, mingled with the *birch*, the *willow*, and the *beech*.

452. On the borders of the cold regions we first meet with the *oak*, the *elm*, the *chesnut*, and other trees of our own country, and these form a principal part of the forests in the temperate and warm regions.

453. In the Torrid Zone, the forests are as valuable as the cultivated fields of other regions, from the variety of nourishing fruits they produce; and the trees assume a size and beauty unknown in other regions.

454. The most remarkable trees of this zone are the lofty *palms*, which yield such rich and refreshing juices; the *teak tree*, the *mahogany*, and the *iron-wood*, which form the most durable timber; and the *logwood* and other trees, which furnish some of the most valuable dyes.

Questions.—How are the vegetables of the Earth distributed? What is the whole number known? What are the most important? What others are useful? Where are grasses found? Are the warm regions always verdant? What are the principal kinds of grain in the Torrid Zone? What in the warm, temperate, and cold regions? How is their place supplied in the frozen regions? What are the fruits of the equatorial and tropical regions? Of the warm? Where is the grape found? What fruits are in the temperate regions? Where are the plum, cherry, and berries found? Where are the common vegetables and roots found? Mention those of the different regions. Describe the forests of the frozen regions. Of the cold and temperate regions. Of the Torrid Zone. What are some of the most remarkable trees of the Torrid Zone? Examine the view of climates, &c., and mention the regions and countries of each vegetable.

ANIMALS.

455. The animals of the Earth are various in different zones, as has already been stated. (*Sec* 91, 98, 106.) They may be divided into tame or domestic, and wild animals.

456. Domestic animals are chiefly used for food, or as beasts of burden and draught. Some wild animals are useful to man for food; and many, on account of their fur, skin, down, or oil: others are dangerous, as beasts of prey, serpents, &c.: and others are very troublesome, as many small animals and insects.

457. The most useful domestic animals, the *horse*, the *ox*, the *sheep*, the *hog*, the *cat*, and the *dog*, are the companions of man in all latitudes, as far as the country will yield them food.

458. The *goat*, the *deer*, the *rabbit*, the *fox*, the *rat*, and the *mouse*, are also found in almost every portion of the globe where man can exist. But all these animals are most perfect in the Temperate Zone, and are much altered by the extremes of heat or cold.

459. In temperate and cold countries the *horse* and the *ox* are the most valuable beasts of burden. In hot and mountainous countries the *ass* and the *mule* are more useful. But in the frozen regions all these become diminutive, their food fails, and the *reindeer* and the *dog* are used in their stead.

460. The *llama* and *vicuna* of South America are peculiarly fitted for carrying heavy burdens over the rugged mountain roads of that country. The *camel* is the only animal, which can carry burdens over the desert regions of Asia and Africa, and has been properly called "the ship of the desert." The *elephant* is also valued as a beast of burden for its docility and strength.

461. The various uses of the *sheep*, the *deer*, the *ox*, and many other animals among us, are well known.

The flesh and milk even of the camel, the ass, and the horse, are used as food in Asia and Africa; and barbarous and half-civilized nations feed on the flesh of the elephant, rhinoceros, and indeed all species of animals.

462. The skins of all the animals which have been mentioned are useful; and the tusks of the elephant, hippopotamus, and walrus, furnish us with ivory.

463. The animals of the wintry and frozen regions are covered with a thick, soft fur. The finest furs are those of the *sable*, *ermine*, *marten*, *beaver*, *otter*, and *seal*, which are procured only in these regions.

464. In the icy or polar regions, the fierce *white bear* and the *fox* are the only land animals known; but the *whale*, the *seal*, and the *walrus* or *sea horse*, are found in the ocean; and the northern seas swarm with the *herring*, the *cod*, and other fish, which afford support to the frozen countries around them. Codfish are chiefly obtained on the coast of Newfoundland, and herrings on the coasts of Northern Europe.

465. In some islands of these seas the *wild fowl* and their eggs are the chief support of the inhabitants; and the downy feathers of some are very valuable.

466. The *walrus*, the *seal*, and the *whale* also produce a large quantity of oil, which serves the inhabitants of the frozen regions for fuel, light, and food.

467. It is only in the torrid and hot regions, that we find the most ferocious of the beasts of prey, the *lion*, the *tiger*, the *hyena*, and *jaguar* or American tiger. The only beasts of prey that are formidable beyond the hot region are the *wild boar*, the *wolf*, and the *bear*, and the *cougour* and *catamount* of America, which resemble the panther in form and fierceness.

468. These regions are also distinguished for the huge size of some of their animals, and the beauty of others. The *elephant*, the *hippopotamus*, and the *camelopard* are from ten to fifteen feet in height. The great

boa or *anaconda* is sometimes thirty feet in length. The *ostrich*, the *cassowary*, and the *condor*, resemble quadrupeds, rather than birds, in their size and strength.

469. The *antelope*, the *leopard*, the *zebra*, and other animals of this zone are remarkably beautiful. The numerous birds are adorned with the richest plumage, and the feathers of the *ostrich* and the *bird of paradise* are the ornaments of kings.

470. In the Torrid Zone *serpents* are most numerous and poisonous. The air is clouded with *insects* also, the sting of which is extremely painful; and some, like the *locusts*, move in such immense bodies, that they destroy the vegetation of whole countries.

Questions.—How are animals distributed on the Earth? What are the most useful domestic animals? Where are these and some other animals found? Where are they found in the greatest perfection? In what regions and countries are the horse and the ox used as beasts of burden? Describe the same particulars with regard to the ass and mule, the llama, the camel, and the elephant. What animals are used for food? What other articles of value are obtained from these animals? In what regions do you find furred animals chiefly, and what are the principal? What other useful animals are mentioned, what are their uses, and where are they found? Where are the lion, the tiger, and the most terrible beasts of prey, found? What else is remarkable among the animals of the torrid and hot regions? What are some of the most beautiful? What can you say of the serpents and insects?

MINERALS.

471. Minerals are not distributed on the Earth according to climates, like animals and vegetables. But, by the care and kindness of Providence, those which are most necessary to man are found in almost all countries; and others are more or less abundant, according to their importance.

472. It is remarkable also, that the most barren portions of the Earth abound most in mineral treasures.

473. The most valuable minerals are the metals, and the ores from which they are extracted. The most common and useful are iron, copper, lead, and tin. The more scarce and precious metals, gold and silver, are used chiefly for money.

474. The diamond, topaz, ruby, and other precious stones, which are rare, are valued principally for their beauty. The more common minerals, as coal, salt, &c. are important to our comfort and life.

475. In our own country, and in most others, *mineral springs* are often found, some warm and some containing iron, salt, or other minerals, which are very useful in the cure of diseases.

The following tables show the situation of the most important minerals and mineral springs.

Questions.—How are minerals distributed on the Earth? What is remarkable concerning them? What are the most useful minerals? Which are the most important metals? What can you say of other minerals? What mineral springs are found?

COPPER.	England, Sweden, Siberia, Japan, Africa.	Many countries.	Anglesea, Cornwall, Devon, Derby.
LEAD.	U. States, England, France, Germany.	Most countries.	Northern counties, Derby, Devon, Wales, Lead Hills, Sco.
TIN.	England, Saxony, Banca Isl.	Spain, Malacca, S. America.	Cornwall & part of Devon only.
SILVER.	Mexico and S. America.	pain, Ger., Nor., Sweden, Sib.	in copper and lead ores a little is found.
GOLD.	Mex. & S. Am., India, Africa.	Germany, Sib., Spain, Irel.	Wicklow, Ireland.
DIAMOND	Brazil, Hindoostan.	Borneo, Siam, Birmah.	None.
TOPAZ, RUBY.	S. Am., India, Sib., Egypt.	Inferior in Germ. & Europe.	None.
AGATE, JASPER.	Asia, Southern Europe.	Many countries.	Scotland and England.
COAL.	Eng., Scotland, U. States.	Most countries.	Numerous, Northern & Mid- land counties, Wales, Middle and South of Scotland.
SULPHUR.	Italy and volcanic countries.	Most countries.	Worcester, Cheshire.
SALT.	Poland, Deserts, Asia & Afr.	Almost all countries.	
NITRE.	Egypt—Africa.	Many countries.	Devonshire, Somerset., Derby- shire, &c.
MARBLE.	Most beautiful in Italy, Greece, Egypt, & Siberia.	Most countries.	Westmoreland, York, N. Wales, Cornwall, S. parts of Scotl., &c.
SLATE.	Eng., Germ., U. States, &c.	Most countries.	
GYPSUM, or Plaster of Paris.	France, Eng., Nova Scotia.	U. States. Many countries.	Derbyshire, Nottingham.

TABLE OF THE MOST CELEBRATED MINERAL SPRINGS.

<i>Mineral Springs.</i>	<i>Most celebrated in Europe.</i>	<i>In Great Britain.</i>
HOT or WARM. Frequent in volcanic countries.	Bagneres, France.—Geysers, Icel.—Baden and Buda, Aust.	Bath, Bristol, Buxton, Matlock.
SULPHUREOUS.	Barege, France.—Aix la Chapelle, Ger. (<i>a very hot spring.</i>)	Harrowgate, Nottingham.
AERATED, with fixed air.	Seltzer, Pyrmont, and Spa, Ger.	
SALINE, or containing medicinal salts.	Carlsbad and Seidlitz, Bohemia.	Epsom, Cheltenham.
CHALYBEATE, or containing Iron.	Spa, Neth.—Pyrmont, Ger.	Bath (<i>hot</i>), Tunbridge, Scarborough, Hartfell, Brighton.
MINERAL OIL or Tar, used for diseases and in lamps.	South of Europe.—Abundant in Persia and Siam.	Shropshire, Derbyshire, &c.
SALT SPRINGS, containing common salt.	France, Germany, and most countries.	Cheshire, Worcester, Stafford.
<p><i>Questions on the Table of Minerals.</i></p> <p>Where is copper most abundant, where else is it found, and what mines in Great Britain?</p> <p>Give the same account of the other metals, iron, lead, tin, &c. and of the precious stones, the diamond, the topaz, ruby, &c., agate, jasper, &c.</p> <p>Give a similar account of sulphur, coal, salt, and nitre; of marble, slate, and plaster of Paris.</p>		
<p><i>Questions on Mineral Springs.</i></p> <p>How are mineral springs divided?</p> <p>What are the principal hot and warm springs in Europe? What in Great Britain?</p> <p>Give the same account of the principal Sulphureous, Aerated, Saline, and Chalybeate springs, and those of Mineral Oil.</p> <p>Where are pure Salt Springs, which are used in making salt, found in Europe and Great Britain?</p>		

ARTS AND MANUFACTURES.

476. Among savage nations there are no distinct trades, but each man builds his own hut, and makes for himself the few instruments, clothes, &c., which he uses.

477. Among civilized nations, each person usually attends only to one art or trade, except in Norway and Russia, where every family generally makes its own furniture, tools, and clothes.

478. By the division of trades every thing can be made more easily and perfectly than among savages. Thus a man, who makes *clothes* only, makes them better and more easily, than if he attempted to make *boats* and *tools* also.

479. The art of working metals is the most important of all the mechanic arts, because our tools and instruments are made of metal, and is said to form half the employment of civilized men.

480. It is unknown to savages, and not well understood among barbarous nations, and they are therefore imperfect in all the arts of civilized life.

481. Among the half-civilized nations, particularly the Turks and Chinese, some branches of this art are well understood. It has been brought to the greatest perfection in Germany, England, France, and other countries of Europe.

482. Barbarous nations are not well acquainted with the art of tilling the ground. It is said, that in China and Japan it is better understood than among us.

483. The various arts practised among us and other civilized nations for cooking and preserving grain, meat, and other articles used for food, are scarcely known among savage nations. But it is remarkable, that almost all nations, civilized and barbarous, have learned to make intoxicating liquors, usually from the juice of vegetables.

484. Most savage and barbarous nations form their clothing from the skins of animals. Some of these nations understand the art of making them soft and pliable like leather.

485. Some barbarous nations make a kind of felt for their covering; others, as in Polynesia, clothe themselves in mats, or in a kind of cloth resembling paper, made of the bark of trees. Some on the Eastern Continent are acquainted with the art of weaving cloth.

486. Among civilized and half-civilized nations, hemp, flax, cotton, wool, and silk, are woven into various kinds of cloth, which are used for clothing and other important purposes.

487. The manufacture of cloths from cotton and silk is well understood among the half-civilized nations of Asia, and we obtain some of the finest carpets and shawls from Turkey and Persia.

488. The manufacture of cloth is also carried to a high degree of perfection in Great Britain, France, Italy, and Germany.

489. These nations, with Holland, Switzerland, and Italy, have supplied the greater part of the civilized world. Great Britain is most distinguished for the quantity and excellence of its cloth manufactures.

490. The people of the United States have been improving in the manufacture of cloth within a few years, especially in the northern states. Many kinds are now made as well as in Europe, but in small quantities.

491. Most barbarous nations practise the art of *pottery* in some rude way. The Chinese porcelain, or china ware, was formerly superior to any found in Europe. It is now equalled only in France, Germany, and England.

492. The arts of *navigation* and *printing* are unknown to savage and barbarous nations, and only imperfectly known to the Chinese and other half-civilized nations.

493. The Chinese, Japanese, and Burmans cut out blocks of wood for printing each page in a book, which cannot be used for any other. Civilized nations print from moveable types, which may be used for many books in succession, and require much less labour.

494. *Painting* and *sculpture*, of a rude kind, are among the first arts learned by savages. They were used to convey information and preserve the history of events among the American Indians, especially the Mexicans.

495. They are carried to perfection only in the most refined nations of Europe.

Questions.—Are there any distinct trades among savage nations? What change is made when men become civilized? What is the effect of this change? What is the most important art, and why? Is this art known to savage and barbarous nations? Is it known to half-civilized nations? What can you say of agriculture, or the art of tilling the ground? What nations understand the art of cooking and preserving food best? What nations make intoxicating liquors? What is the clothing of savage and barbarous nations generally? What exceptions are there to this? What is the clothing of civilized nations?

Where is the manufacture of the various kinds of cloth understood? Which are the principal manufacturing nations? What has been done in the United States as to manufactures? What nations understand pottery? What important arts are mentioned next, and to whom are they known? How do the Chinese print? What nations understand painting and sculpture? What nations excel in them?

CANALS.

496. Canals are artificial passages for water, usually made to unite two rivers or portions of the sea, for inland navigation.

497. They often pass under mountains, and often flow in aqueducts over rivers, being supplied with water from some higher stream or lake.

498. On the Nile, the Euphrates, and the Rhine, for some distance above their mouths, canals are formed to drain the land, which answer the purposes of navigation.

499. In the Netherlands they serve as roads, on which the people travel in boats through all parts of the country.

500. China is most distinguished for the length and size of its canals, some of which are large enough to receive ships. The Imperial Canal of China is 500 miles long, and at its termination in the Hoang-Ho, one fifth of a mile wide; but a considerable part is formed by the channel of a river.

501. The principal canals in Russia are from the Volga to the Neva and the Don. Connected with the great rivers of Siberia, they form an inland navigation, almost complete, from the R. Amour of Tartary and the Pacific Ocean to the Baltic and Mediterranean Seas.

502. In Prussia there are canals which connect the Vistula with the Oder and the Elbe.

503. From the Baltic Sea, a canal is cut across the southern part of Denmark to the North Sea. In France, the Rhone is connected by several canals with the Seine and the Loire. Thus there is a passage by water from the Baltic to the Mediterranean, without entering the Atlantic Ocean.

504. The largest canal in France, and indeed in Europe, is the Canal Royal of Languedoc, 180 miles in length, from the Mediterranean to the River Garonne.

505. Great Britain is not excelled by any country for skill and enterprise in the structure of canals. More than 2,400 miles of artificial navigation have been formed in various parts of the kingdom.

506. One of the principal canals is the Grand Trunk, which passes from the River Mersey, 99 miles, to the Trent, near the centre of the kingdom; and thence, 40 miles to the Severn; making in the whole about 140

miles. From the Grand Trunk the Oxford Canal extends 90 miles to that city. From the upper part of the Oxford Canal a branch of 100 miles is carried into the Thames, a short distance above London; which connects this metropolis with the great system of artificial navigation in the interior, and is called the Grand Junction.

The Ellesmere and Chester Canal connects the rivers Mersey, Dee, and Severn, by two lines crossing each other. It contains an aqueduct 1000 feet long, and 126 feet high; probably the largest ever constructed.

507. In Scotland, the Caledonian Canal, which connects the Murray Frith on the eastern coast with the Irish Sea, is 59 miles in length (37 of which are in natural waters), and is navigable for frigates of 32 guns. The Forth and Clyde Canal admits vessels which draw 8 feet of water.

508. The Grand Canal of Ireland extends from the Liffey at Dublin, 83 miles, to the River Shannon. The Royal Canal, which is north of this, extends in a parallel line, seldom 10 miles distant from it, from Dublin, to another portion of the Shannon.

509. The United States have a number of canals already made, or now making, from 20 to 60 miles in length, connecting the waters of the River St. Lawrence with the Hudson, the Hudson with the Delaware, the Delaware with Chesapeake Bay, this with the sounds and rivers of Carolina.

The largest yet constructed, and the longest artificial navigation in the world, is the Erie Canal of New York, 360 miles in length from Lake Erie to the Hudson. A canal is now making to connect Lake Erie with the River Ohio, which will complete the communication from the Hudson to the Mississippi and the Gulf of Mexico.

Questions.—What are canals? How are they often constructed? What is the chief object of canals at the mouths of

some great rivers? What country is most distinguished for its canals? What is the length and size of the Imperial Canal of China? What places are connected by means of it? (*See the map.*) What are the chief canals of Russia, and what great inland navigation is nearly completed by them? Describe the course by inland waters, with two portages by land, from the Amour to the Baltic and the Mediterranean.

What canals are in Prussia, and what seas are connected by them? What is the nearest water communication from the eastern part of the Baltic to the Rhone and other rivers of France? Which is the longest canal in France? What can you say of the canals of England and Scotland? Where is the Grand Trunk? What branches has it? What ports are thus connected? Where is the Ellesmere and Chester Canal? What are the principal canals in Scotland? In Ireland? In the United States? Which is the largest in the United States?

COMMERCE.

510. In almost every country the people are in want of some things found in other countries, while they have more of other things than they need; and this gives rise to *commerce*.

511. Thus the United States have more wheat and cotton than the people need, and therefore they send it to other countries, in exchange for coffee, sugar, and cloths, of which they are in want; and thus the manufactures of the British Islands are exchanged for the productions of the torrid and frigid zones.

512. The commerce of savage nations is generally the exchange of one kind of goods for another. As this is not always convenient, civilized nations use money to exchange for every thing.

513. Thus, if our manufactures be worth more than the wine, &c. we obtain from other nations, they give us money to pay the difference; and as the Chinese do not want our productions, we send the money to buy tea from them.

514. Gold, silver, and copper coins are the money of civilized and half-civilized nations; but among savage and barbarous nations, beads, shells, or even lumps of salt, are used as money.

515. The arts of ship-building and navigation are well understood among civilized nations only, who are thus enabled to carry on commerce by sea with all parts of the world.

516. The inhabitants of Turkey and Barbary are the only half-civilized nations who understand these arts in any considerable degree; and their commerce is chiefly on the Mediterranean Sea.

517. The Chinese, and other half-civilized nations, are so imperfectly acquainted with navigation and ship-building, that their commerce is chiefly in their own country, by means of rivers and canals.

518. In the dry and desert countries of Asia and Africa commerce is chiefly carried on over land. The merchants travel with camels, in large companies, called *caravans*, which go and return at certain periods. A similar trade is carried on over the Andes of South America with mules and llamas.

519. The trade of savage and barbarous nations is very limited, because they have little to give in exchange, and their ignorance of navigation prevents their going to any great distance from the land.

520. The most commercial nations of the world are Great Britain, the United States, France, Spain, Russia, Portugal, and the Netherlands.

521. The commerce of Spain, Portugal, and Holland, which was chiefly with their colonies, has very much declined. That of Russia is rapidly increasing.

522. The ships of Great Britain go in great numbers to every part of the world, and obtain its productions and manufactures, usually in exchange for those of their own country.

523. The amount of shipping from the ports of Great Britain exceeds that of any other nation, the commerce of which is known; and the United States hold the next rank in this respect.

Questions.—Do men usually find all they want in their own country? What arises from this, and what examples can you give? How is commerce carried on in savage and in civilized nations? Give an example. What kind of money is in use? What arts are important to commerce, and what nations understand them? What half-civilized nations understand these arts? What can you say of other half-civilized nations, and which are they? What means of internal commerce are there in China, India, and the Islands of Asia? (*See the map, and chapter on canals.*) Describe the commerce of Africa and other dry countries. Of South America.

What can you say of the trade of savage and barbarous nations? What are the most distinguished commercial nations of the world? What can you say of Spain and some others of these? Is the commerce of Great Britain extensive? How is the commerce of the United States, compared with that of other nations? Mention some of the principal articles we use, and where we must send to obtain them, and where the best can be procured; as coffee, tea, oranges, precious stones, metals, &c. (*See the account of productions, manufactures, &c.*)

LEARNING.

524. The savage and barbarous nations of the world cannot write their languages, and have no books to teach or preserve what they know.

525. They can keep an account of events only by drawing pictures of them; or by songs and stories, which they remember and teach to their children.

526. Among the Tartars, Arabs, Laplanders, and other barbarous nations, these songs and stories are repeated in public, to amuse large assemblies.

527. Savage and barbarous nations are ignorant of Astronomy, Philosophy, Geography, and even of Arithmetic; and many nations cannot count more than ten.

528. The half-civilized nations of Asia and Africa *write* their languages, and have books for teaching and preserving their knowledge.

529. They understand Arithmetic, and something of other parts of the Mathematics and Astronomy; but they know scarcely any thing of Philosophy, Chemistry, Geography, and other sciences.

530. Most languages are written from the left hand of the page across to the right, like ours; but the Arabic, Persian, and some other languages of Asia, are written from the right to the left, and the Chinese in columns from the top to the bottom*.

531. Among the civilized nations of the world, the sciences are well understood, and there are numerous books.

* The whole number of languages known is stated by Adelung to be 3,000, of which 1,200 are in America.

532. Great Britain, France, and Germany, including part of Austria and Prussia, are most distinguished for learned men and discoveries in science.

533. Sweden, Denmark, Holland, Switzerland, and Italy, are respectable for science and learning; but not advancing like the preceding nations.

534. Spain, Portugal, Turkey, Poland, and Norway, are now less distinguished for learned men than any other parts of Europe.

535. Russia has been advancing for 100 years from a state of barbarism; the sciences are now understood and cultivated in the principal towns and universities, and the emperor does much to promote them.

536. Almost all the valuable knowledge of European nations is found in the United States of America; but the number of learned men is far less than in Europe.

Questions.—What is a distinguishing characteristic of savage and barbarous nations? How do they keep an account of events? What is common among the Tartars and some other nations? What is the state of knowledge among savage and barbarous nations? What can you say of the languages and state of knowledge in half-civilized nations? How are most languages written?

In what nations are the sciences understood? What nations are now most distinguished for science? What is the state of Italy, Spain, Holland, &c.? In what countries of Europe is learning neglected? What can you say of Russia? How are the United States, compared with European countries, in respect to learning?

EDUCATION.

537. In civilized countries numerous universities and colleges are established, to give instruction in all branches of learning and science.

538. There are also universities among half-civilized nations; but they are devoted to the instruction of their priests and public officers in their religion and laws.

539. In many countries distinguished for their learned men, as in Germany, the common people are very ignorant for want of schools; while in others, like Denmark, which have not so many learned men, the common people are generally well educated.

540. The Chinese, Japanese, and Burmans print books from

blocks of wood ; but in half-civilized nations generally they are *written* on leaves, or rolls of parchment, and are so expensive, that the rich only can buy them.

541. In civilized countries books are printed from types, at a very cheap rate, and it is much more easy for the poor to obtain knowledge.

542. Schools for the poor have been long established in Scotland, Iceland, Norway, Sweden, Denmark, Holland, and Switzerland ; and the common people of these countries are generally taught to read and write.

543. In England the education of the common people is not so good ; but numerous schools have been established within a few years for the education of the poor. The northern counties are best supplied.

544. The common people of France are very ignorant. Those of Ireland are in a much lower state. In Russia, Poland, and Austria, the lower classes are generally slaves to the nobles, and almost barbarous. But all these countries have begun to establish schools for their instruction.

545. In most parts of Germany and the South of Europe the poor are extremely ignorant, and are left without instruction.

546. It is the remark of a British writer, concerning the United States, that “ the great body of the American people is *better educated* than the bulk of *any* European community.” Schools are so numerous, and instruction is so easily obtained, that few are found who cannot read and write, and information is constantly spread by books and newspapers.

547. In South America and the European colonies of the East and West Indies there are some men of education ; but few schools are established, and the common people are very ignorant.

548. The numerous slaves and native inhabitants of these countries scarcely receive any instruction, and it is often prohibited.

549. In the half-civilized nations of Asia and Africa children of the higher classes learn to read and write. The poor are usually taught only some mechanic art. In China, however, most of the people are taught writing and arithmetic.

Questions.—What institutions of learning are there among civilized nations ? Compare those of Europe and the U. States. Are there similar institutions in half-civilized countries ? Are the common people always well educated where there are many

learned men? How do the books of half-civilized nations differ from ours? What effect has this on the state of learning?

Where have public schools been long known? What is the state of education in England? What is the state of the common people in France—Ireland—Russia—Poland—and Austria?—In the South of Europe? In the United States? In South America and other colonies? What can you say of the schools of the half-civilized nations?

MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF NATIONS.

FOOD.

550. The food of savage nations consists chiefly of fish and wild animals, with such fruits and nourishing vegetables as they can find.

551. Some tribes of South America and Africa, that are called *cannibals*, are accustomed to eat human flesh; and several in the islands of the Pacific Ocean feast on the bodies of their enemies killed or taken in war.

552. Barbarous nations, who lead a wandering life, like the Tartars, live principally on the milk and flesh of their cattle, sheep, camels, and horses. Those who are more settled, like the inhabitants of Polynesia and Africa, subsist chiefly on the fruits of the Earth.

553. The half-civilized nations in the hot countries of Asia and Africa live chiefly on rice and other vegetables; and the crowded population of Southern Asia renders food so scarce, that the poor are glad to eat mice, lizards, and even worms and insects.

554. In warm climates, wines made from the juice of grapes and the palm tree, with beer and other exhilarating liquors made of rice and other vegetables, are the principal drinks.

555. In temperate and cold countries more animal food is eaten; and spirituous liquors, distilled from grain and fruits, and among the Tartars even from milk, are too much used.

556. In the countries near the polar circles flesh or fish is the principal food of the inhabitants; and among the Greenlanders, Esquimaux, and other nations living near the sea, the oil extracted from whales, seals, and other marine animals, is much used for food.

557. In these countries grain and vegetables are so scarce,

that they often grind the bark of trees to make bread, and in some parts even their cattle are fed on fish, for want of grass or vegetables.

558. In America flesh is the principal food of all classes ; but in Europe it is less used, and the poor subsist chiefly on vegetables and fish.

559. *Tea* is the most common drink in China and Japan ; and *coffee*, in Arabia, Turkey, and Persia.

560. Both tea and coffee are much used in Europe and North America ; but *matte*, or the tea of Paraguay, is generally used in South America.

Questions.—What is the principal food of savage nations ? Mention some of these nations. Are there any nations who eat human flesh ? What is the food of barbarous nations generally ? What of half-civilized nations ? Mention some of them. What drinks are common in warm climates ? What kind of food and drink are most common in cold countries ? What is the principal food in the countries near the polar circle ? Are vegetables abundant in these countries ? What are the kinds of food most used in America and Europe ? In what countries are tea and coffee the most common drinks ? What are common in Europe and N. America, and in S. America ?

DRESS AND ORNAMENTS.

561. In warm climates, savage and barbarous nations are usually almost naked ; and the poor, even in half-civilized countries, wear very little clothing.

562. The skins of animals are generally used for clothing among savage and barbarous nations.

563. The Tartars dress in horse hides ; and many of the Asiatics and Africans, and even of the Russians, in sheep skins, with the wool turned inwards in winter, and outwards in summer.

564. The people of Polynesia, and some other barbarous countries, dress in mats of reeds or straw, or in cloth made of bark.

565. Civilized and half-civilized nations, and some of the barbarous nations of Africa, dress in cloths of linen, cotton, silk, and woollen.

566. Cotton and silk are most used in warm countries ; linen

and woollen in colder climates ; and in very cold countries furs are used in addition.

567. The dress of the half-civilized nations of Asia and Africa is generally a robe, with a close vest, large drawers, and a turban or cap on the head. Females are covered from head to foot with a thick veil, which conceals the whole face except the eyes.

568. Civilized nations generally have a tight dress for males, and a loose flowing dress for females. In Europe they are made in different forms, which are often changed ; while the fashions of Asiatic nations continue always the same.

569. The Russians, Poles, and Hungarians, dress more like Asiatics than Europeans.

570. The Asiatic nations generally wear long beards ; but Europeans, except in Russia and Norway, cut them off, and the Indians of America pluck them out.

571. The Chinese and some of the Tartars and the Poles shave their *heads*, except a single lock of hair on the crown.

572. Among civilized nations gold and jewels are worn in the ears, and on the neck, wrists, and head, often with the addition of feathers.

573. Beside these ornaments, savage and barbarous nations frequently wear rings in the nose and lips, and they are very fond of adorning themselves with feathers and pieces of glass and metal.

574. In some nations of Europe it is common for females to paint their faces. The same custom prevails among savage and barbarous nations ; but they use a greater number of colours, and frequently blacken their teeth and eyebrows.

575. Savages are also accustomed to paint their bodies, and cover them with marks or scars, to render themselves beautiful or terrible, especially when they are going to war.

Questions.—What can you say of the dress of nations in warm climates ? What is used for clothing among savages ? What skins are used among the Tartars and other barbarous nations ? What is used for dress in Polynesia ? What among civilized and half-civilized nations ? What are most used in warm climates, and what in others ? What is the dress of half-civilized nations ? What of civilized nations ? What European

nations dress in the Asiatic manner? What nations wear long beards, and what is the custom of other nations? What nations shave the head? What ornaments are used by civilized nations? What are those used by savages? Where is it customary to paint the face? How do savages attempt to improve their appearance?

HABITATIONS.

576. The American Indians, and other savages, in temperate climates, live in huts built of stakes, twigs, or bark, often plastered with earth, with a hole in the roof to let out the smoke.

577. In the frozen regions of Lapland, Siberia, &c., they usually build their huts half under ground, that they may be warmer; and no opening is left for the smoke, except the door.

578. The Tartars, Arabs, and other wandering nations, live in tents of felt or cloth, which they remove from place to place. (*See* § 226 and 239.)

579. Some barbarous nations in warm climates, especially in Polynesia, build very neat huts of canes, lined and covered with mats.

580. The houses of the higher classes in Europe and Asia are usually of brick or stone; and in the warm countries are built with an open court or square in the centre, and with flat roofs. In North America, most of the houses are built of wood, except in the large towns.

581. In Asia, and in Poland, Ireland, Portugal, and some other parts of Europe, the habitations of the poor are miserable cottages formed or plastered with clay, and thatched with leaves or straw. These have usually but one room for all the family, and often no floor, or bed, but the ground covered with straw.

582. Among savage and barbarous nations, and even in Ireland, Poland, and Russia, the cattle and other beasts often live in the same room with the family to which they belong. In many countries on the continent of Europe, the lower story of the house is commonly used as a stable.

583. The Asiatics have little furniture in their houses, as they are accustomed to sit, eat, and sleep, on a part of the floor, which is made higher than the rest, and covered with carpets.

Questions.—What account is given of the habitations of savage nations? How are they built in the frozen regions? What are those of wandering barbarians? Of the Australians and the Siamese? (*See* § 257 and 245.) What in warm climates, among barbarous nations? What can you say of the houses of the rich in Europe and Asia? What of those of the poor? Where are cattle kept among barbarous nations? In the countries on the continent of Europe? How do the Asiatics sit and sleep?

STATE OF SOCIETY.

584. Among Christian nations, the sick, the aged, and the feeble, are taken care of; and there are numerous hospitals and asylums for the distressed.

585. In Pagan and Mahometan countries such institutions are scarcely known, and the poor and unfortunate are not usually treated with kindness.

586. Among Pagans it is common to leave a person to drown or perish, without trying to assist him; and the Tartars, and many savage nations, are accustomed to leave the sick, the deformed, and the aged, even their own parents and children, to perish in solitary places.

587. The Christian religion requires men to be kind and benevolent to all of every nation; and among Christian nations, even enemies taken in war are usually treated with kindness.

588. Mahometans think it right to injure or kill any person of another religion; and among Mahometan and Pagan nations those taken in war are made slaves, or cruelly treated.

589. Among civilized nations the laws do not allow private revenge; but in savage and barbarous nations each man revenges himself, by killing or injuring those who offend him.

590. In all savage and barbarous countries females are obliged to carry burdens, and perform the most severe labours, while the men are sleeping or amusing themselves.

591. In China they are often obliged to drag the plough; in Greenland they fish with their husbands at sea; and even in Germany, Sweden, and other parts of Europe, they are accustomed to labour in the field.

592. Among half-civilized nations females are regarded a

slaves, fit only to serve and amuse their husbands, especially in Mahometan countries. In China, Java, Circassia, and almost all barbarous and savage nations, they are bought and sold as wives, without their own consent.

593. In most half-civilized countries females receive no instruction, except in music, dancing, and embroidery; they are not permitted to converse with men, even of their own families; and they are often treated with the greatest cruelty by their husbands.

524. The inhabitants of Tibet and some of the Asiatic Islands are the only half-civilized people who treat females with respect and kindness.

595. In Hindoostan and China great numbers of infants, particularly females, are destroyed every year, from the poverty of the people, or as an act of religious worship.

Questions.—Where do we find hospitals and asylums for the distressed? What parts of the world are Christian? (*See Chart.*) Are there such institutions in Pagan and Mahometan countries? Mention these countries. How are the sick and aged treated among the Tartars? How are prisoners taken in war treated among Christian nations? How among Mahometans and Pagans? In what nations is revenge forbidden? How are females treated in savage and barbarous nations? How are they employed in China, and other countries mentioned? How are they regarded among half-civilized nations? What instruction and treatment do they receive? In what half-civilized countries are females treated kindly? In what countries are infants destroyed?

THE END.

LONDON:

PRINTED BY THOMAS DAVISON, WHITEFRIARS.



